

# Ceng 205 Computer Programming II

Cem Özdoğan

29th July 2004



# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction, Classes and Data Abstraction</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1	History: The Rise and Decline of Structured Programming . .	18
1.1.1	The Problem - Complexity . . . . .	18
1.2	Object-Oriented Programming (OOP) . . . . .	18
1.2.1	Encapsulation . . . . .	19
1.2.2	Inheritance . . . . .	19
1.2.3	Polymorphism . . . . .	19
1.2.4	Advantages of OOP . . . . .	20
1.2.5	OOP Terminology . . . . .	21
1.2.6	Other Object-Oriented Languages . . . . .	22
1.3	Structure Definitions . . . . .	22
1.4	Accessing Structure Members . . . . .	23
1.5	Implementing a User-Defined Type <i>Time</i> with a <i>struct</i> . . . .	24
1.6	Implementing a <b>Time</b> Abstract Data Type with a <b>class</b> . . . .	24
1.7	Class Scope and Accessing Class Members . . . . .	28
1.8	Separating Interface from Implementation (see Figs 1.8-1.11) .	32
1.9	Controlling Access to Members (see Fig. 1.12) . . . . .	32
1.10	Access Functions and Utility Functions . . . . .	39
1.11	Initializing Class Objects: Constructors . . . . .	43
1.12	Using Default Arguments with Constructors . . . . .	43
1.13	Destructors . . . . .	48
1.14	When Constructors and Destructors Are Called . . . . .	49
1.15	Using <i>Set</i> and <i>Get</i> Functions . . . . .	54
1.16	Default Memberwise Assignment . . . . .	60
1.17	Software Reusability . . . . .	62
<b>2</b>	<b>Classes Part II</b>	<b>63</b>
2.1	const (Constant) Objects and const Member Functions . . . .	63
2.2	Composition: Objects as Members of Classes . . . . .	65
2.3	friend Functions and friend Classes . . . . .	65
2.4	Using the <b>this</b> Pointer . . . . .	80

2.5	Dynamic Memory Management with Operators <code>new</code> and <code>delete</code>	92
2.6	static Class Members	93
2.7	Data Abstraction and Information Hiding	98
2.7.1	Example: Array Abstract Data Type	99
2.7.2	Example: String Abstract Data Type	99
2.7.3	Example: Queue Abstract Data Type	99
2.8	Container Classes and Iterators	100
2.9	Proxy Classes	100
<b>3</b>	<b>Operator Overloading</b>	<b>105</b>
3.1	Introduction	105
3.2	Fundamentals of Operator Overloading	105
3.3	Restrictions on Operator Overloading	106
3.4	Operator Functions As Class Members Vs. As Friend Functions	107
3.5	Overloading Stream-Insertion and Stream-Extraction Operators	108
3.6	Overloading Unary Operators	108
3.7	Overloading Binary Operators	109
3.8	Case Study: Array class	111
3.9	Converting between Types	122
3.10	Case Study: A String Class	123
3.11	Overloading <code>++</code> and <code>--</code>	133
3.12	Case Study: A Date Class	134
3.13	Standard Library Classes <code>string</code> and <code>vector</code>	140
<b>4</b>	<b>Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance</b>	<b>151</b>
4.1	Introduction	151
4.2	Base Classes and Derived Classes	152
4.3	<b>protected</b> Members	155
4.4	Relationship between <i>Base Classes</i> and <i>Derived Classes</i>	155
4.4.1	Creating a Circle class without using inheritance	160
4.4.2	Point/Circle Hierarchy using Inheritance	164
4.4.3	Point/Circle Hierarchy using <b>protected</b> data	167
4.4.4	Point/Circle Hierarchy using <b>private</b> data	174
4.5	Case Study: Three-Level Inheritance Hierarchy	174
4.6	Constructors and Destructors in Derived Classes	184
4.7	"Uses A" and "Knows A" Relationships	186
4.8	public, protected and private Inheritance	186
4.9	Software Engineering with Inheritance	186

<b>5</b>	<b>Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism</b>	<b>195</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	195
5.2	Relationships Among Objects in an Inheritance Hierarchy . .	195
5.2.1	Invoking Base-Class Functions from Derived-Class Objects	196
5.2.2	Aiming Derived-Class Pointers at Base-Class Objects .	196
5.2.3	Derived-Class Member-Function Calls via Base-Class Pointers	197
5.2.4	Virtual Functions . . . . .	203
5.3	Polymorphism Examples . . . . .	205
5.4	Type Fields and switch Structures . . . . .	205
5.5	Abstract Classes . . . . .	205
5.6	Case Study: Inheriting Interface and Implementation . . . . .	212
5.7	Polymorphism, Virtual Functions and Dynamic Binding "Under the Hood"	225
5.8	Virtual Destructors . . . . .	225
5.9	Case Study: Payroll System Using Polymorphism . . . . .	225
5.10	vita . . . . .	239



# List of Tables





# List of Figures

1.1	Survey of Programming Techniques; unstructured, procedural, modular, and object-oriented	
1.2	Creating a structure, setting its members and printing the structure (part 1 of 2).	25
1.3	Creating a structure, setting its members and printing the structure (part 2 of 2).	26
1.4	<b>Time</b> abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 1 of 3).	29
1.5	<b>Time</b> abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 2 of 3).	30
1.6	<b>Time</b> abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 3 of 3).	31
1.7	Demonstrating the class member access operators. and $- >$	33
1.8	<b>Time</b> class definition	34
1.9	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions (part 1 of 2).	35
1.10	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions (part 2 of 2).	36
1.11	Program to test class <b>Time</b> .	37
1.12	<b>private</b> members of a class are not accessible outside the class.	38
1.13	<b>SalesPerson</b> class definition	39
1.14	<b>SalesPerson</b> class member-function definitions (part 1 of 2)	40
1.15	<b>SalesPerson</b> class member-function definitions (part 2 of 2)	41
1.16	Utility function demonstration	42
1.17	<b>Time</b> class containing a constructor with default arguments.	44
1.18	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions including a constructor that takes arguments. (part 1 of 2)	45
1.19	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions including a constructor that takes arguments. (part 2 of 2)	46
1.20	Constructor with default arguments. (part 1 of 2)	47
1.21	Constructor with default arguments. (part 2 of 2)	48
1.22	<b>CreateAndDestroy</b> class definition.	50
1.23	<b>CreateAndDestroy</b> class member-function definitions.	51
1.24	Order in which constructors and destructors are called. (part 1 of 2)	52
1.25	Order in which constructors and destructors are called. (part 2 of 2)	53
1.26	<b>Time</b> class definition with <i>set</i> and <i>get</i> functions.	55
1.27	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions,including <i>set</i> and <i>get</i> functions. (part 1 of 2)	56
1.28	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions,including <i>set</i> and <i>get</i> functions. (part 2 of 2)	57
1.29	<i>Set</i> and <i>get</i> functions manipulating an object's <b>private</b> data. (part 1 of 2)	58
1.30	<i>Set</i> and <i>get</i> functions manipulating an object's <b>private</b> data. (part 2 of 2)	59
1.31	Default memberwise assignment. (part 1 of 2)	61

1.32	Default memberwise assignment. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	62
2.1	<b>Time</b> class definition with <b>const</b> member functions. . . . .	66
2.2	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions, including <b>const</b> member functions. (part	
2.3	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions, including <b>const</b> member functions. (part	
2.4	<b>const</b> objects and <b>const</b> member functions. . . . .	69
2.5	Member initializer used to initialize a constant of a built-in data type. (part 1 of 2)	
2.6	Member initializer used to initialize a constant of a built-in data type. (part 2 of 2)	
2.7	Erroneous attempt to initialize a constant of a built-in data type by assignment. (p	
2.8	Erroneous attempt to initialize a constant of a built-in data type by assignment. (p	
2.9	<b>Date</b> class definition. . . . .	74
2.10	<b>Date</b> class member-function definitions. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	75
2.11	<b>Date</b> class member-function definitions. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	76
2.12	<b>Employee</b> class definition showing composition. . . . .	77
2.13	<b>Employee</b> class member-function definitions, including constructor with a member-	
2.14	Member-object initializers. . . . .	79
2.15	Friends can access <b>private</b> members of the class. . . . .	81
2.16	Nonfriend/nonmember functions cannot access <b>private</b> members. (part 1 of 2)	82
2.17	Nonfriend/nonmember functions cannot access <b>private</b> members. (part 2 of 2)	83
2.18	<b>this</b> pointer implicitly and explicitly used to access an object's members. (part 1 of	
2.19	<b>this</b> pointer implicitly and explicitly used to access an object's members. (part 2 of	
2.20	<b>Time</b> class definition modified to enable cascaded member-function calls. . . . .	87
2.21	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-funct	
2.22	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-funct	
2.23	<b>Time</b> class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-funct	
2.24	Cascading member-function calls. . . . .	91
2.25	<b>Employee</b> class definition with a <b>static</b> data member to track the number <b>Emplo</b>	
2.26	<b>Employee</b> class member-function definitions. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	95
2.27	<b>Employee</b> class member-function definitions. (part 2 of 2) and <b>static</b> data membe	
2.28	<b>static</b> data member tracking the number of objects of a class. (part 2 of 2)	97
2.29	<b>Implementation</b> class definition. . . . .	102
2.30	<b>Interface</b> class definition. . . . .	103
2.31	<b>Interface</b> class member-function definitions and Implementing a proxy class.	104
3.1	Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators. (part 1 of 2)	109
3.2	Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators. (part 2 of 2)	110
3.3	<b>Array</b> class definition with overloaded operators. . . . .	113
3.4	<b>Array</b> class member-and friend-function definitions. (part 1 of 4)	114
3.5	<b>Array</b> class member-and friend-function definitions. (part 2 of 4)	115
3.6	<b>Array</b> class member-and friend-function definitions. (part 3 of 4)	116
3.7	Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators. (part 4 of 2)	117

3.8	<b>Array</b> class test program. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	118
3.9	<b>Array</b> class test program. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	119
3.10	<b>Array</b> class test program, output. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	120
3.11	<b>Array</b> class test program, output. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	121
3.12	<b>String</b> class definition with operator overloading. (part 1 of 2)	124
3.13	<b>String</b> class definition with operator overloading. (part 2 of 2)	125
3.14	<b>String</b> class member-function and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 1 of 4)	126
3.15	<b>String</b> class member-function and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 2 of 4)	127
3.16	<b>String</b> class member-function and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 3 of 4)	128
3.17	<b>String</b> class member-function and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 4 of 4)	129
3.18	<b>String</b> class test program. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	130
3.19	<b>String</b> class test program. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	131
3.20	<b>String</b> class test program, output. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	132
3.21	<b>String</b> class test program, output. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	133
3.22	<b>Date</b> class definition with overloaded increment operator. . .	135
3.23	<b>Date</b> class member-and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 1 of 3)	136
3.24	<b>Date</b> class member-and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 2 of 3)	137
3.25	<b>Date</b> class member-and <b>friend</b> -function definition. (part 3 of 3)	138
3.26	<b>Date</b> class test program. . . . .	139
3.27	<b>Date</b> class test program, output. . . . .	140
3.28	Standart library class <b>string</b> (part 1 of 2). . . . .	142
3.29	Standart library class <b>string</b> (part 2 of 2). . . . .	143
3.30	Standart library class <b>string</b> , output. . . . .	144
3.31	Standart library class <b>vector</b> . (part 1 of 3) . . . . .	146
3.32	Standart library class <b>vector</b> . (part 2 of 3) . . . . .	147
3.33	Standart library class <b>vector</b> . (part 3 of 3) . . . . .	148
3.34	Standart library class <b>vector</b> , output. . . . .	149
4.1	Inheritance examples . . . . .	153
4.2	Inheritance hierarchy for university <b>CommunityMembers</b> and Inheritance hierarchy for S	
4.3	<b>Point</b> class header file . . . . .	156
4.4	<b>Point</b> class represents an xy-coordinate pair. (part 1 of 2) . .	157
4.5	<b>Point</b> class represents an xy-coordinate pair. (part 2 of 2) . .	158
4.6	<b>Point</b> class test program. . . . .	159
4.7	<b>Circle</b> class header file. . . . .	160
4.8	<b>Circle</b> class contains an xy-coordinate pair and a radius. (part 1 of 2)	161
4.9	<b>Circle</b> class contains an xy-coordinate pair and a radius. (part 2 of 2)	162
4.10	<b>Circle</b> class test program. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	163
4.11	<b>Circle</b> class test program. (part 2 of 2) and <b>Circle2</b> class header file. (part 1 of 2)	164
4.12	<b>Circle2</b> class header file (part 2 of 2) and Private base-class data can not be accessed from	
4.13	Private base-class data can not be accessed from derived class. (part 2 of 2)	166

4.14	<b>Point2</b> class header file. . . . .	167
4.15	<b>Point2</b> class represents an xy-coordinate pair as <b>protected</b> data.	168
4.16	<b>Circle3</b> class header file. . . . .	169
4.17	<b>Circle3</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point2</b> . . . . .	170
4.18	Protected base-class data can be accessed from derived class. (part 1 of 2)	171
4.19	Protected base-class data can be accessed from derived class. (part 2 of 2)	172
4.20	<b>Point3</b> class header file. Point/Circle Hierarchy Using <b>private</b> Data	175
4.21	<b>Point3</b> class uses member functions to manipulate its <b>private</b> data.	176
4.22	<b>Circle4</b> class header file. . . . .	177
4.23	<b>Circle4</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point3</b> , which does not provide <b>protected</b> d	
4.24	<b>Circle4</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point3</b> , which does not provide <b>protected</b> d	
4.25	Base class <b>private</b> data is accessible to a derived class via <b>public</b> or <b>protected</b> m	
4.26	<b>Cylinder</b> class header file. . . . .	181
4.27	<b>Cylinder</b> class inherits from class <b>Circle4</b> and redefines member function <b>getAre</b>	
4.28	<b>Point/Circle/Cylinder</b> hierarchy test program. (part 1 of 2)	183
4.29	<b>Point/Circle/Cylinder</b> hierarchy test program. (part 2 of 2)	184
4.30	<b>Point4</b> class header file and <b>Point4</b> base class contains a constructor and a destru	
4.31	<b>Point4</b> base class contains a constructor and a destructor. (part 2 of 2)	188
4.32	<b>Circle5</b> class header file. . . . .	189
4.33	<b>Circle5</b> class inherits from class <b>Point4</b> . (part 1 of 2) . . . .	190
4.34	<b>Circle5</b> class inherits from class <b>Point4</b> . (part 2 of 2) . . . .	191
4.35	Constructor and destructor call order. . . . .	192
4.36	Summary of base-class member accessibility in a derived class.	193
5.1	<b>Point</b> class header file. . . . .	197
5.2	<b>Point</b> class represents an xy-coordinate pair. . . . .	198
5.3	<b>Circle</b> class header file. . . . .	199
5.4	<b>Circle</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point</b> . . . . .	200
5.5	Assigning addresses of base-class and derived-class objects to base-class and derived	
5.6	Assigning addresses of base-class and derived-class objects to base-class and derived	
5.7	Aiming a derived-class pointer at a base-class object. . . . .	203
5.8	Attempting to invoke derived-class-only functions via a base-class pointer. (part 1 o	
5.9	Attempting to invoke derived-class-only functions via a base-class pointer. (part 2 o	
5.10	<b>Point</b> class header file declares <b>print</b> function as <b>virtual</b> (upper) and <b>Circle</b> class	
5.11	Demonstrating polymorphism by invoking a derived-class virtual function via a bas	
5.12	Demonstrating polymorphism by invoking a derived-class virtual function via a bas	
5.13	Defining the polymorphic interface for the <b>Shape</b> hierarchy classes.	212
5.14	Abstract base class <b>Shape</b> header file and Abstract base class <b>Shape</b> .	213
5.15	<b>Point</b> class header file. . . . .	214
5.16	<b>Point</b> class implementation file. (part 1 of 2) . . . . .	215
5.17	<b>Point</b> class implementation file. (part 2 of 2) . . . . .	216

5.18	<b>Circle</b> class header file and <b>Circle</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point</b> . (part 1 of 2)	217
5.19	<b>Circle</b> class that inherits from class <b>Point</b> . (part 2 of 2)	218
5.20	<b>Cylinder</b> class header file.	219
5.21	<b>Cylinder</b> class implementation file. (part 1 of 2)	220
5.22	<b>Cylinder</b> class implementation file. (part 2 of 2)	221
5.23	Demonstarting polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 1 of 3)	
5.24	Demonstarting polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 2 of 3)	
5.25	Demonstarting polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 3 of 3)	
5.26	Class hierarchy for the polymorphic employee-payroll application.	226
5.27	<b>Employee</b> class header file.	227
5.28	<b>Employee</b> class implementation file. (part 1 of 2)	228
5.29	<b>Employee</b> class implementation file (part 2 of 2) and <b>SalariedEmployee</b> class header file	
5.30	<b>SalariedEmployee</b> class implementation file.	230
5.31	<b>HourlyEmployee</b> class header file.	231
5.32	<b>HourlyEmployee</b> class implementation file.	232
5.33	<b>CommissionEmployee</b> class header file.	233
5.34	<b>CommissionEmployee</b> class implementation file.	234
5.35	<b>BasePlusCommissionEmployee</b> class header file.	235
5.36	<b>BasePlusCommissionEmployee</b> class implementation file.	236
5.37	<b>Employee</b> class hierarchy driver program.(part 1 of 2)	237
5.38	<b>Employee</b> class hierarchy driver program.(part 2 of 2)	238



# Chapter 1

## Introduction, Classes and Data Abstraction

- Basic characteristics of O-O languages
  - Everything is an object.
  - Object-orientation is a natural way of thinking about the world and of writing computer programs.
  - Objects are all around us—people, animals, plants, cars, planes, buildings, computers, etc.
  - Abstractions allow us to view screen images as objects such as people, planes, trees, etc. rather than as individual dots of color.
  - Abstractions allow us to think in terms of beaches rather than grains of sand, houses rather than bricks.
  - All objects have attributes such as size, shape, color, weight, etc.
  - All objects exhibit various behaviors. A baby cries, sleeps, crawls, walks; a car accelerates, brakes, turns, etc.
  - Humans learn about objects by studying their attributes and observing their behaviors.
  - Different objects can have many of the same attributes and exhibit similar behaviors.
    - \* Comparisons can be made between babies and adults, and between humans and chimpanzees.
    - \* Cars, trucks, little red wagons, and roller blades have much in common.

- Object-oriented programming (OOP) models real-world objects with software counterparts.
    - \* It takes advantage of class relationships where objects of a certain class, such as a class of vehicles, have the same characteristics.
    - \* It takes advantage of inheritance relationships, and even multiple inheritance relationships, where newly created classes are derived by inheriting characteristics of existing classes, yet contain unique characteristics of their own.
  - A program is a bunch of objects telling each other what to do, by sending messages.
  - Each object has its own memory, and is made up of other objects.
  - Every object has a type (class).
  - All objects of the same type can receive the same messages.
- Objects
    - An object has an **interface**, determined by the class it's an instance of.
    - A class is an **abstract data type** (or **user-defined data type**).
    - Defining a class requires defining its interface.
    - What about built-in types?
      - \* Think of an *int*
      - \* What's its interface?
      - \* How do you "send it messages"?
      - \* How do you make (construct) one?
  - The interface is the critical part, but the details (implementation) are important too
  - Users use the interface (the "public part"), the implementation is hidden by "access control".
  - C libraries have always been like this, sort of:
    - The library designer invents a useful struct.
    - Then she provides some useful functions for the struct.
    - The user creates an instance of the struct, then applies library functions to it.



- C++ uses "access specifiers": **public**, **protected**, and **private** to determine who can use the attribute or function.
- Two Ways of Reusing Classes
  - **Composition:** One class has another as a "part".
  - **Inheritance:** One class is a specialized version of another
- **Polymorphism:** Different subclasses respond to the same message, possibly with different actions.
- Creating and Destroying Objects
  - We usually get this for free with built-in types like int or char, we just say
    - \* int i;
    - \* char c;
  - With user-defined types (the ones we make), we need to be explicit about what we want:
    - \* constructor function
    - \* destructor function
    - \* C++ has new and delete (similar to malloc and free in C)
    - \* This is a very important issue! What is a memory leak?
- A compiler typically does
  - preprocessing
  - first pass to make parse tree
  - second pass to generate code
- The result is an object module (.obj file).
- A linker produces an .exe file by
  - Resolving references between compilation units (i.e., separate source files)
  - Adding code from libraries
  - Adding special startup code
  - Building the final executable file

- In C++, variables and functions must be both declared and defined. The rules:
  - A declaration tells the compiler that you intend to use a variable/function with a certain name.
  - A variable declaration specifies the type (int, float, etc.) so the compiler can check your usage.
  - A variable declaration doesn't allocate space for the variable.
  - A function declaration specifies the function name, argument types, and return type, so the compiler can check your usage.
  - A function declaration doesn't allocate space for the function code.
  - A variable definition causes memory to be allocated to hold its value. This can only be done (must be done) exactly once in the entire program. Why?
  - And so for functions.
- Libraries are collections of compiled function definitions.
  - Library header files (.h files, or files with no extension) are collections of (uncompiled e.g., ASCII) function declarations.
  - *#include*ing a header file is a fast and painless way of providing the declarations the compiler insists on.
  - The compiler is happy, since it has declarations from the .h file(s)
  - The linker is happy, because there is exactly one definition of a library function.
  - The linker resolves references to variables/functions that are spread across files.
- Survey of Programming Techniques (see Fig. 1.1)
  - Unstructured programming.
    - \* Simple sequence of command statements.
    - \* Operates directly on global data.
    - \* Not good for large programs.
    - \* Repetitive statement segments are copied over.
    - \* The repetitive sequences extracted and named so that they can be called and values returned leads to the idea of procedures.

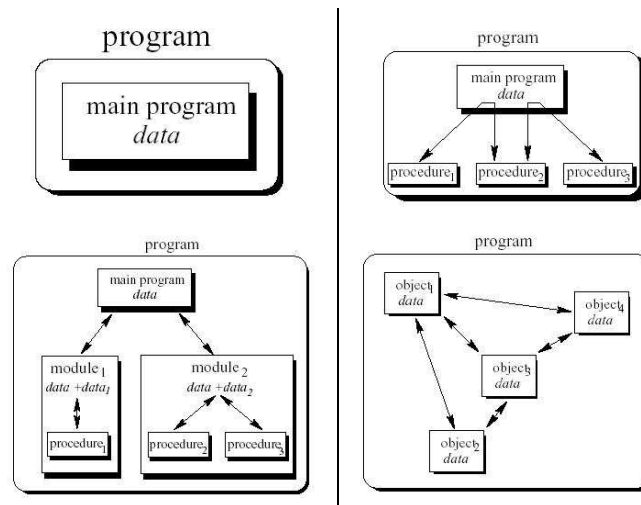


Figure 1.1: Survey of Programming Techniques; unstructured, procedural, modular, and object-oriented programming.

- Procedural programming.
  - \* Combines returning sequences of statements into one function.
  - \* Procedure calls are used to invoke procedures.
  - \* Programs are now more structured.
  - \* Errors are easier to detect.
  - \* Combining procedures into modules is the next logical extension.
- Modular programming.
  - \* Procedures with common functionality are grouped into modules.
  - \* Main program coordinates calls to procedures within modules.
  - \* Each module has its own data and isolated for other modules.
- Object-oriented programming.
  - \* Data and the functions that operate on that data are combined into an object.
  - \* Programming is not function based but object based.
  - \* Objects are based on three basic ideas: Encapsulation, Inheritance and Polymorphism.

## 1.1 History: The Rise and Decline of Structured Programming

For many years (roughly 1970 to 1990), *structured programming* was the most common way to organize a program. This is characterized by a functional-decomposition style - breaking the algorithms in to every smaller functions. This technique was a great improvement over the ad hoc programming which preceded it. However, as programs became larger, structured programming was not able control the exponential increase in complexity.

### 1.1.1 The Problem - Complexity

Complexity measurements grow exponentially as the size of programs grow. One measurement is *coupling*, or much different elements (modules, data structures) interact with each other. The fewer the connections, the less complex a program is. Low coupling is highly desirable.

There have been several post-structured programming attempts to control complexity. One of these is to use software *components* - preconstructed software “parts” to avoid programming. And when you have to program, use *object-oriented programming* (OOP).

Bjarne Stroustrup of Bell Labs extended the C language to be capable of Object-Oriented Programming (OOP), and it became popular in the 1990’s as C++. There were several enhancements, but the central change was extending **struct** to allow it to contain functions and use inheritance. These extended structs were later renamed **classes**. A C++ standard was established in 1999, so there are variations in the exact dialect that is accepted by pre-standard compilers.

## 1.2 Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)

Object-Oriented Programming groups related data and functions together in a *class*, generally making data private and only some functions public. Restricting access decreases coupling and increases cohesion. While it is not a panacea, it has proven to be very effective in reducing the complexity increase with large programs. For small programs may be difficult to see the advantage of OOP over, eg, structured programming because there is little complexity regardless of how it’s written. Many of the mechanics of OOP are easy to demonstrate; it is somewhat harder to create small, convincing examples.

OOP is often said to incorporate three techniques: inheritance, encapsulation, and polymorphism. Of these, you should first devote yourself to choosing the right classes (possibly difficult) and getting the encapsulation right (fairly easy). Inheritance and polymorphism are not even present in many programs, so you can ignore them at that start.

### 1.2.1 Encapsulation

*Encapsulation* is grouping data and functions together and keeping their implementation details private. Greatly restricting access to functions and data reduces *coupling*, which increases the ability to create large programs. Classes also encourage *coherence*, which means that a given class does one thing. By increasing coherence, a program becomes easier to understand, more simply organized, and this better organization is reflected in a further reduction in coupling.

### 1.2.2 Inheritance

*Inheritance* means that a new class can be defined in terms of an existing class. There are three common terminologies for the new class: the *derived* class, the *child* class, or the *subclass*. The original class is the *base* class, the *parent* class, or the *superclass*. The new child class inherits all capabilities of the parent class and adds its own fields and methods. Altho inheritance is very important, especially in many libraries, is often not used in an application.

### 1.2.3 Polymorphism

*Polymorphism* is the ability of different functions to be invoked with the same name. There are two forms.

*Static polymorphism* is the common case of *overriding* a function by providing additional definitions with different numbers or types of parameters. The compiler matches the parameter list to the appropriate function.

*Dynamic polymorphism* is much different and relies on parent classes to define *virtual functions* which child classes may redefine. When this virtual member function is called for an object of the parent class, the execution dynamically chooses the appropriate function to call - the parent function if the object really is the parent type, or the child function if the object really is the child type. This explanation is too brief to be useful without an example, but that will have to be written latter.

### 1.2.4 Advantages of OOP

- Re-use of code. Linking of code to objects and explicit specification of relations between objects allows related objects to share code. Encapsulation and weak coupling between objects means class definitions are more likely to be re-used in other applications. Objects as well as procedures (focus of C libraries) become likely candidates for re-use. The enforcement of a consistent interface to objects lessens code duplication.
- Ease of comprehension. Structure of code and data structures in it can be set up to closely mimic the generic application concepts and processes. High-level code could make some sense even to a non-programmer. The analysis/design/coding phases in development become more seamless since they can all deal in the same concepts.
- Ease of fabrication and maintenance (redesign and extension) facilitated by encapsulation, data abstraction which allow for very clean designs. When an object is going into disallowed states, only its methods need be investigated. This narrows down search for problems.
- C++ Objectives
  - extend C to allow for object-oriented programming
  - other improvements - some resulting in deprecation of some C facilities
  - remain compatible and comparable (syntax, performance, portability, design philosophy - don't pay for what you don't use, don't get stuck with things you don't need) with C
  - emphasize compile-time type checking
- C++ is multi-paradigm. It provides for the object-oriented approach but doesn't enforce its use. This makes it a good transition language and gives it flexibility when a particular situation doesn't fit the object-oriented philosophy.
- With this object-oriented approach, C++ overcomes certain shortcomings of C:
  - Lack of encapsulation means that if an object is getting trashed, it's difficult to find the code responsible. Many procedures may have had idiosyncratic interactions with the object.

- Doesn't recognize relationships between types. Pointer casting necessary. In C++, pointer casting can just about always be dispensed with. Pointer casting is a kludge. Compiler can't check if you are doing it correctly. No type safety (see definition below).
  
  - Not easy to extend existing libraries; for example, make it so `printf()` can handle new types.
  
  - Except for FILEs, there are no well-developed objects (like stacks and lists) in the standard libraries.
- 
- C's future is as a portable "universal" assembler, a back end for code generators.
- 
- 
- While any C++ compiler should be able to compile a C program successfully with minor changes, several aspects of C programming are discarded in the transition to C++: new facilities are supplied for I/O, memory allocation and error handling; macros and pointer casts become obsolete for the most part.

### 1.2.5 OOP Terminology

Along with each programming revolution comes a new set of terminology. There are some new OOP concepts, but many have a simple analog in pre-OOP practice.

OOB Term	Definition
method	Same as function, but the typical OO notation is used for the call, ie, $f(x,y)$ is written $x.f(y)$ where $x$ is an object of class that contains this $f$ method.
send a message	Call a function (method).
instantiate	Allocate a class/struct object (ie, instance) with <code>new</code> .
class	A struct with both data and functions.
object	Memory allocated to a class/struct. Often allocated with <code>new</code> .
member	A field or function is a member of a class if it's defined in that class
constructor	Function-like code that initializes new objects (structs) when they instantiated (allocated with <code>new</code> ).
destructor	Function-like code that is called when an object is deleted to free any resources (eg, memory) that it has pointers to.
inheritance	Defining a class (child) in terms of another class (parent). All of the public members of the parent class are available in the child class.
polymorphism	Defining functions with the same name, but different parameters.
overload	A function is overloaded if there is more than one definition. See polymorphism.
override	Redefine a function from a parent class in a child class.
subclass	Same as child, derived, or inherited class.
superclass	Same as parent or base class.
attribute	Same as data member or member field.

### 1.2.6 Other Object-Oriented Languages

- Objective C
- CLOS (Common Lisp Object System)
- Ada 9X
- FORTRAN 90
- Smalltalk
- Modula-3
- Eiffel

## 1.3 Structure Definitions

- Structures, Aggregate data types built using elements of other types



```
struct Time{ //structure tag
int hour; //structure members
int minute; //structure members
int second; //structure members
};
```

- Structure member naming
  - In same **struct**: must have unique names
  - In different **structs**: can share name
- **struct** definition must end with semicolon
- Self-referential structure
  - Structure member cannot be instance of enclosing **struct**
  - Structure member can be pointer to instance of enclosing **struct** (self-referential structure), Used for linked lists, queues, stacks and trees
- **struct** definition
  - Creates new data type used to declare variables
  - Structure variables declared like variables of other types
  - Examples:

```
Time timeObject;
Time timeArray[ 10 ];
Time *timePtr;
Time \&timeRef = timeObject;
```

## 1.4 Accessing Structure Members

- Member access operators
  - Dot operator (.) for structure and class members
  - Arrow operator (→) for structure and class members via pointer to object
  - Print member **hour** of **timeObject**:

```

cout << timeObject.hour;
OR
timePtr = &timeObject;
cout << timePtr->hour;}

```

- **timePtr->hour** same as ( **\*timePtr** ).hour
  - \* Parentheses required, \* lower precedence than .

## 1.5 Implementing a User-Defined Type *Time* with a *struct*

- Default: structures passed by value
  - Pass structure by reference; Avoid overhead of copying structure
- C-style structures
  - No *interface*; If implementation changes, all programs using that **struct** must change accordingly
  - Cannot print as unit; Must print/format member by member
  - Cannot compare in entirety; Must compare member by member

## 1.6 Implementing a Time Abstract Data Type with a class

- Classes
  - Model objects
    - \* Attributes (data members)
    - \* Behaviors (member functions)
  - Defined using keyword **class**
  - Member functions
    - \* Methods
    - \* Invoked in response to messages
- Member access specifiers
  - **public**: Accessible wherever object of class in scope

## 1.6. IMPLEMENTING A **TIME** ABSTRACT DATA TYPE WITH A **CLASS** 27

```
1 // Fig. 6.1: fig06_01.cpp
2 // Create a structure, set its members, and print it.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <iomanip>
9
10 using std::setfill;
11 using std::setw;
12
13 // structure definition
14 struct Time {
15     int hour; // 0-23 (24-hour clock format)
16     int minute; // 0-59
17     int second; // 0-59
18 }; // end struct Time
19
20
21 void printUniversal( const Time & ); // prototype
22 void printStandard( const Time & ); // prototype
23
```

Define structure type `Time` with three integer members.

Pass references to constant `Time` objects to eliminate copying overhead.

Outline 7

fig06\_01.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
24 int main()
25 {
26     Time dinnerTime;
27
28     dinnerTime.hour = 18; // set hour member of dinnerTime
29     dinnerTime.minute = 30; // set minute member of dinnerTime
30     dinnerTime.second = 0; // set second member of dinnerTime
31
32     cout << "Dinner will be held at ";
33     printUniversal( dinnerTime );
34     cout << " universal time, \nwhich is ";
35     printStandard( dinnerTime );
36     cout << " standard time. \n";
37
38     dinnerTime.hour = 29; // set hour to invalid value
39     dinnerTime.minute = 73; // set minute to invalid value
40
41     cout << " \nTime with invalid values: ";
42     printUniversal( dinnerTime );
43     cout << endl;
44
45     return 0;
46 } // end main
47
48
```

Use dot operator to initialize structure members.

Direct access to data allows assignment of bad values.

Outline 8

fig06\_01.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.2: Creating a structure, setting its members and printing the structure (part 1 of 2).

9

Outline

fig06\_01.cpp  
(3 of 3)

```

49 // print time in universal-time format
50 void printUniversal( const Time &t )
51 {
52     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << t.hour << ":"
53         << setw( 2 ) << t.minute << ":"
54         << setw( 2 ) << t.second;
55 }
56 // end function printUniversal
57
58 // print time in standard-time format
59 void printStandard( const Time &t )
60 {
61     cout << ( ( t.hour == 0 || t.hour == 12 ) ?
62             12 : t.hour % 12 ) << ":" << setfill( '0' )
63         << setw( 2 ) << t.minute << ":"
64         << setw( 2 ) << t.second
65         << ( t.hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
66 }
67 // end function printStandard

```

Dinner will be held at 18:30:00 universal time,  
which is 6:30:00 PM standard time.

Time with invalid values: 29:73:00

Use parameterized stream manipulator `setfill`.

Use dot operator to access data members.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.3: Creating a structure, setting its members and printing the structure (part 2 of 2).

- **private:** Accessible only to member functions of class
- **protected:**
- Constructor function
  - Special member function
    - \* Initializes data members
    - \* Same name as class
  - Called when object instantiated
  - Several constructors; Function overloading
  - No return type

```

1 class Time {
2
3 public:
4     Time(); // constructor

```

## 1.6. IMPLEMENTING A **TIME** ABSTRACT DATA TYPE WITH A **CLASS** 29

```
5     void setTime( int, int, int ); // set hour, minute, second
6     void printUniversal();         // print universal-time format
7     void printStandard();         // print standard-time format
8
9 private:
10    int hour;      // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
11    int minute;   // 0 - 59
12    int second;   // 0 - 59
13
14 }; // end class Time
```

- Objects of class

- After class definition

- \* Class name new type specifier; C++ extensible language
- \* Object, array, pointer and reference declarations

- Example:

```
Time sunset;
Time arrayOfTimes[ 5 ];
Time *pointerToTime;
Time &dinnerTime = sunset;
```

- Member functions defined outside class

- Binary scope resolution operator (::)

- \* **Ties** member name to class name
- \* Uniquely identify functions of particular class
- \* Different classes can have member functions with same name

- Format for defining member functions

```
ReturnType ClassName::MemberFunctionName( ){
.
.
.
}
```

- Does not change whether function **public** or **private**

- Member functions defined inside class

- Do not need scope resolution operator, class name

- Compiler attempts **inline**; Outside class, inline explicitly with keyword inline
- Destructor
  - Same name as class; Preceded with tilde (~)
  - No arguments
  - Cannot be overloaded
  - Performs *termination housekeeping*
- Advantages of using classes
  - Simplify programming
  - Interfaces; Hide implementation
  - Software reuse
    - \* Composition (aggregation); Class objects included as members of other classes
    - \* Inheritance; New classes derived from old

## 1.7 Class Scope and Accessing Class Members

- Class scope
  - Data members, member functions
  - Within class scope
    - \* Class members; Immediately accessible by all member functions, Referenced by name
  - Outside class scope
    - \* Referenced through handles; Object name, reference to object, pointer to object
- File scope
  - Nonmember functions
- Function scope
  - Variables declared in member function

```

1 // Fig. 6.3: fig06_03.cpp
2 // Time class.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <iomanip>
9
10 using std::setfill;
11 using std::setw;
12
13 // Time abstract data type (ADT) definition
14 class Time {
15
16 public:
17     Time(); // constructor
18     void setTime( int, int, int ); // set hour, minute, second
19     void printUniversal(); // print universal-time format
20     void printStandard(); // print standard-time format
21
22 private:
23     int hour; // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
24     int minute; // 0 - 59
25     int second; // 0 - 59
26
27 }; // end class Time
28
29 // Time constructor initializes each data member
30 // ensures all Time objects start in a consistent state
31 Time::Time()
32 {
33     hour = minute = second = 0;
34 } // end Time constructor
35
36 // set new Time value using universal time, perform validity
37 // checks on the data values and set invalid values to zero
38 void Time::setTime( int h, int m, int s )
39 {
40     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
41     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 ) ? m : 0;
42     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0;
43 } // end function setTime
44
45
46

```

15


 [Outline](#)

fig06\_03.cpp  
(1 of 5)

16


 [Outline](#)

fig06\_03.cpp  
(2 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.4: **Time** abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 1 of 3).

```

47 // print Time in universal format
48 void Time::printUniversal()
49 {
50     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":"
51         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":"
52         << setw( 2 ) << second;
53
54 } // end function printUniversal
55
56 // print Time in standard format
57 void Time::printStandard()
58 {
59     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
60         << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
61         << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
62         << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
63
64 } // end function printStandard
65
66 int main()
67 {
68     Time t; // instantiate object t of class Time
69

```

Outline 17

fig06\_03.cpp (3 of 5)

No arguments (implicitly "know" purpose is to print data members); member function calls more concise.

Declare variable t to be object of class Time.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

70 // output Time object t's initial values
71 cout << "The initial universal time is ";
72 t.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
73
74 cout << "\nThe initial standard time is ";
75 t.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
76
77 t.setTime( 13, 27, 6 ); // change time
78
79 // output Time object t's new values
80 cout << "\n\nUniversal time after
81 t.printUniversal(); // 13:27:06
82
83 cout << "\n\nStandard time after se
84 t.printStandard(); // 1:27:06 PM
85
86 t.setTime( 99, 99, 99 ); // attempt invalid settings
87
88 // output t's values after specifying invalid values
89 cout << "\n\nAfter attempting invalid settings:"
90 << "\n\nUniversal time: ";
91 t.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
92

```

Outline 18

fig06\_03.cpp (4 of 5)

Invoke public member functions to print time.

Set data members using public member function.

Attempt to set data members to invalid values using public member function.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.5: **Time** abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 2 of 3).



The screenshot shows a C++ program with the following code:

```

93  cout << "\nStandard time: ";
94  t.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
95  cout << endl;
96
97  return 0;
98
99 } // end main

```

The output of the program is:

```

The initial universal time is 00:00:00
The initial standard time is 12:00:00 AM

Universal time after setTime is 13:27:06
Standard time after setTime is 1:27:06 PM

After attempting invalid settings:
Universal time: 00:00:00
Standard time: 12:00:00 AM

```

A callout box with a blue border and white background contains the text: "Data members set to 0 after attempting invalid settings." An arrow points from this box to the output lines "Universal time: 00:00:00" and "Standard time: 12:00:00 AM".

On the right side of the screenshot, there is an "Outline" section with a downward arrow icon, listing "fig06\_03.cpp (5 of 5)" and "fig06\_03.cpp output (1 of 1)". The number "19" is visible in the top right corner of the screenshot area.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.6: **Time** abstract data type implementation as a class, (part 3 of 3).

- Only known to function
- Variables with same name as class-scope variables
  - \* Class-scope variable *hidden*; Access with scope resolution operator (`::`)

```
ClassName::classVariableName
```
- Variables only known to function they are defined in
- Variables are destroyed after function completion
- Operators to access class members
  - Identical to those for **structs**
  - Dot member selection operator (`.`)
    - \* Object
    - \* Reference to object
  - Arrow member selection operator (`->`)

- \* pointers

## 1.8 Separating Interface from Implementation (see Figs 1.8-1.11)

- Separating interface from implementation
  - Advantage; Easier to modify programs
  - Disadvantage
    - \* Header files
    - \* Portions of implementation; Inline member functions
    - \* Hints about other implementation; private members
    - \* Can hide more with proxy class
- Header files
  - Class definitions and function prototypes
  - Included in each file using class; **#include**
  - File extension **.h**
- Source-code files
  - Member function definitions
  - Same base name; Convention
  - Compiled and linked

## 1.9 Controlling Access to Members (see Fig. 1.12)

- Access modes
  - **private**
    - \* Default access mode
    - \* Accessible to member functions and **friends**
  - **public**

```

1 // Fig. 6.4: fig06_04.cpp
2 // Demonstrating the class member access operators . and ->
3 //
4 // CAUTION: IN FUTURE EXAMPLES WE AVOID PUBLIC DATA!
5 #include <iostream>
6
7 using std::cout;
8 using std::endl;
9
10 // class Count definition
11 class Count {
12
13 public:
14     int x;
15
16     void print()
17     {
18         cout << x << endl;
19     }
20
21 }; // end class Count
22

```

Data member `x` public to illustrate class member access operators; typically data members private.

Outline 25

fig06\_04.cpp (1 of 2)

```

23 int main()
24 {
25     Count counter; // create counter object
26     Count *counterPtr = &counter; // create pointer to counter
27     Count &counterRef = counter;
28
29     cout << "Assign 1 to x and print using the object's name: ";
30     counter.x = 1; // assign 1 to data member x
31     counter.print(); // call member function print
32
33     cout << "Assign 2 to x and print using a reference: ";
34     counterRef.x = 2; // assign 2 to data member x
35     counterRef.print(); // call member function print
36
37     cout << "Assign 3 to x and print using a pointer: ";
38     counterPtr->x = 3; // assign 3 to data member x
39     counterPtr->print(); // call member function print
40
41     return 0;
42 }

```

Use dot member selection operator for counter object.

Use dot member selection operator for counterRef reference to object.

Use a row member selection operator for counterPtr pointer to object.

Outline 26

fig06\_04.cpp (2 of 2)

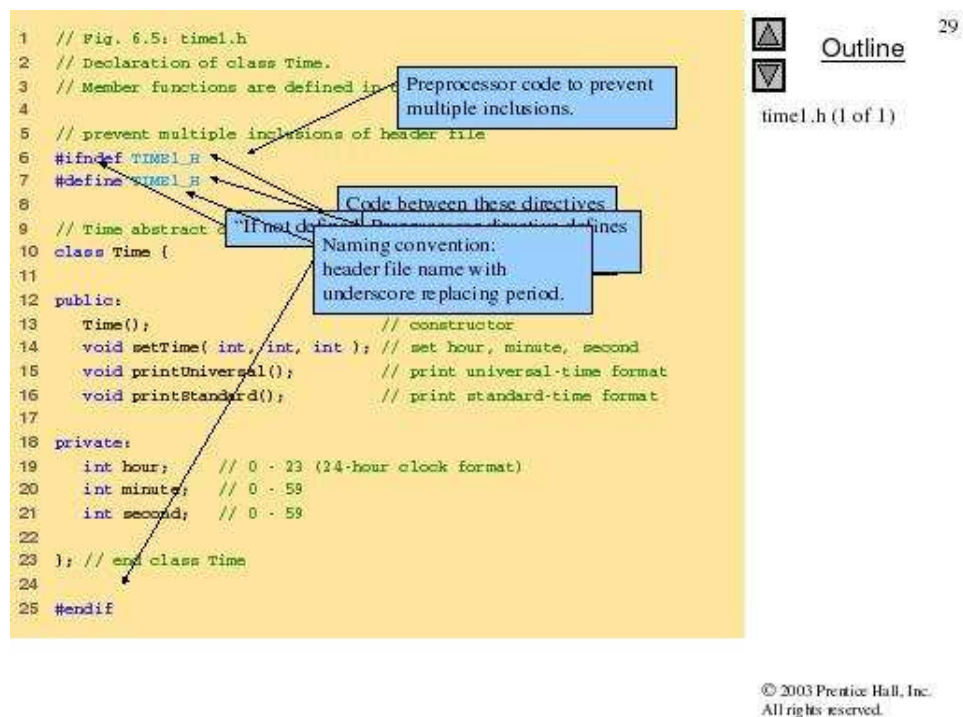
fig06\_04.cpp output (1 of 1)

```

Assign 1 to x and print using the object's name: 1
Assign 2 to x and print using a reference: 2
Assign 3 to x and print using a pointer: 3

```

Figure 1.7: Demonstrating the class member access operators. and  $\rightarrow$

Figure 1.8: **Time** class definition

- \* Accessible to any function in program with handle to class object
- \* **protected** ; (discuss later)
- Class member access
  - Default **private**
  - Explicitly set to **private**, **public**, **protected**
- **struct** member access
  - Default **public**
  - Explicitly set to **private**, **public**, **protected**
- Access to class's **private** data
  - Controlled with access functions (accessor methods)
    - \* Get function; Read **private** data
    - \* Set function; Modify **private** data

```

1 // Fig. 6.6: time1.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Time.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include <iomanip>
8
9 using std::setfill;
10 using std::setw;
11
12 // include definition of class Time from time1.h
13 #include "time1.h"
14
15 // Time constructor initial
16 // Ensures all Time objects
17 Time::Time()
18 {
19     hour = minute = second = 0;
20 } // end Time constructor
21
22

```

Include header file time1.h.

Name of header file enclosed in quotes; angle brackets cause preprocessor to assume header part of C++ Standard Library.

30

Outline

time1.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

23 // Set new Time value using universal time. Perform validity
24 // checks on the data values. Set invalid values to zero.
25 void Time::setTime( int h, int m, int s )
26 {
27     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
28     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 ) ? m : 0;
29     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0;
30 }
31 // end function setTime
32
33 // print Time in universal format
34 void Time::printUniversal()
35 {
36     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":"
37         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":"
38         << setw( 2 ) << second;
39 }
40 // end function printUniversal
41

```

31

Outline

time1.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.9: **Time** class member-function definitions (part 1 of 2).

```
42 // print Time in standard format
43 void Time::printStandard()
44 {
45     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
46         << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
47         << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
48         << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
49
50 } // end function printStandard
```

[Outline](#)

32

time1.cpp (3 of 3)

Figure 1.10: **Time** class member-function definitions (part 2 of 2).

```

1 // Fig. 6.7: fig06_07.cpp
2 // Program to test class Time.
3 // NOTE: This file must be compiled with timel.cpp.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 // include definition of class Time
10 #include "timel.h"
11
12 int main()
13 {
14     Time t; // instantiate object t of class Time
15
16     // output Time object t's initial values
17     cout << "The initial universal time is ";
18     t.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
19     cout << "\nThe initial standard time is ";
20     t.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
21
22     t.setTime( 13, 27, 6 ); // change time
23

```

Include header file `timel.h` to ensure correct creation/manipulation and determine size of `Time` class object.

Outline 33

fig06\_07.cpp (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // output Time object t's new values
25 cout << "\n\nUniversal time after setTime is ";
26 t.printUniversal(); // 13:27:06
27 cout << "\n\nStandard time after setTime is ";
28 t.printStandard(); // 1:27:06 PM
29
30 t.setTime( 99, 99, 99 ); // attempt invalid settings
31
32 // output t's values after specifying invalid values
33 cout << "\n\nAfter attempting invalid settings:"
34     << "\n\nUniversal time: ";
35 t.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
36 cout << "\n\nStandard time: ";
37 t.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
38 cout << endl;
39
40 return 0;
41

```

```

The initial universal time is 00:00:00
The initial standard time is 12:00:00 AM

Universal time after setTime is 13:27:06
Standard time after setTime is 1:27:06 PM

```

Outline 34

fig06\_07.cpp (2 of 2)

fig06\_07.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.11: Program to test class `Time`.

36

Outline

fig06\_08.cpp  
(1 of 1)

```

1 // Fig. 6.8: fig06_08.cpp
2 // Demonstrate errors resulting from attempts
3 // to access private class members.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7
8 // include definition of class Time from time1.h
9 #include "time1.h"
10
11 int main()
12 {
13     Time t; // create Time object
14
15     t.hour = 7; // error: 'Time::hour' is not accessible
16
17     // error: 'Time::minute' is not accessible
18     cout << "minute = " << t.minute;
19
20
21     return 0;
22 } // end main

```

Recall data member `hour` is `private`; attempts to access `private` members results in error.

Data member `minute` also `private`; attempts to access `private` members produces error.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

37

Outline

fig06\_08.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

```

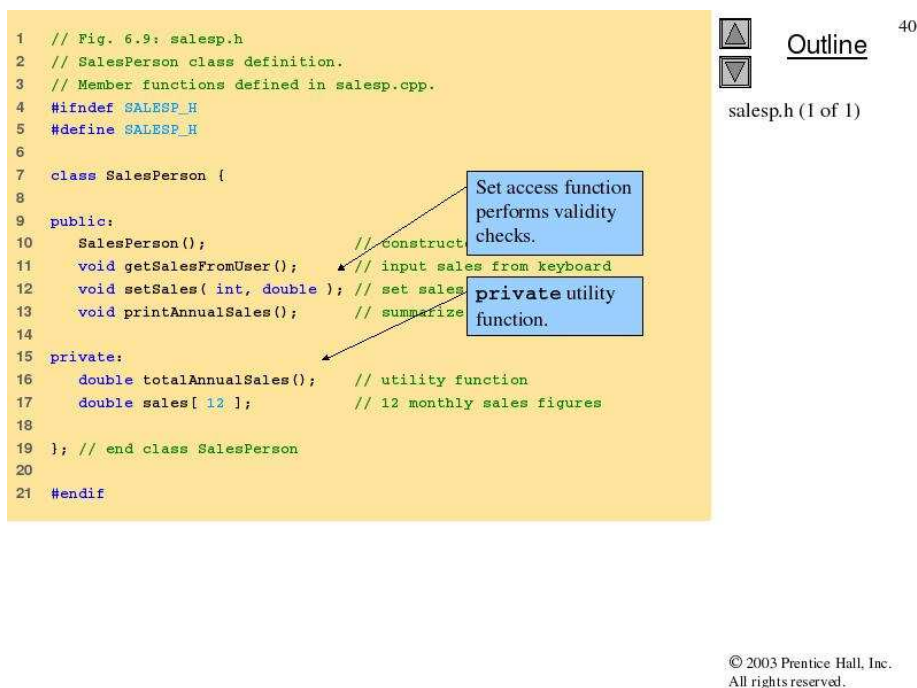
D:\cpphtp4_examples\ch06\Fig6_06\Fig06_06.cpp(16) : error C2248 :
'hour' : cannot access private member declared in class 'Time'
D:\cpphtp4_examples\ch06\Fig6_06\Fig06_06.cpp(19) : error C2248 :
'minute' : cannot access private member declared in class 'Time'

```

Errors produced by attempting to access `private` members.

Figure 1.12: **private** members of a class are not accessible outside the class.





```

1 // Fig. 6.9: salesp.h
2 // SalesPerson class definition.
3 // Member functions defined in salesp.cpp.
4 #ifndef SALESP_H
5 #define SALESP_H
6
7 class SalesPerson {
8
9 public:
10     SalesPerson();           // construct
11     void getSalesFromUser(); // input sales from keyboard
12     void setSales( int, double ); // set sales
13     void printAnnualSales(); // summarize
14
15 private:
16     double totalAnnualSales(); // utility function
17     double sales[ 12 ];       // 12 monthly sales figures
18
19 }; // end class SalesPerson
20
21 #endif

```

Set access function performs validity checks.

private utility function.

Outline

salesp.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.13: SalesPerson class definition

## 1.10 Access Functions and Utility Functions

Not all member functions need be made **public** to serve as part of the interface of the class.

- Access functions
- **public**
  - Read/display data
  - Predicate functions
  - Check conditions
  - Utility functions (helper functions)
- **private**
  - Support operation of **public** member functions
  - Not intended for direct client use

The program of Figs. 1.13-1.16 demonstrates the notion of a *utility function* (also called helper function).

```

1 // Fig. 6.10: salesp.cpp
2 // Member functions for class SalesPerson.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::cin;
7 using std::endl;
8 using std::fixed;
9
10 #include <iomanip>
11
12 using std::setprecision;
13
14 // include SalesPerson class definition from salesp.h
15 #include "salesp.h"
16
17 // initialize elements of array sales to 0.0
18 SalesPerson::SalesPerson()
19 {
20     for ( int i = 0; i < 12; i++ )
21         sales[ i ] = 0.0;
22 } // end SalesPerson constructor
23
24

```



[Outline](#)

41

salesp.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25 // get 12 sales figures from the user at the keyboard
26 void SalesPerson::getSalesFromUser()
27 {
28     double salesFigure;
29
30     for ( int i = 1; i <= 12; i++ ) {
31         cout << "Enter sales amount for month " << i << ": ";
32         cin >> salesFigure;
33         setSales( i, salesFigure );
34     } // end for
35 } // end function getSalesFromUser
36
37
38
39 // set one of the 12 monthly sales figures; function subtracts
40 // one from month value for proper subscript
41 void SalesPerson::setSales( int month, double amount )
42 {
43     // test for valid month and amount values
44     if ( month >= 1 && month <= 12 && amount > 0 )
45         sales[ month - 1 ] = amount; // adjust for subscripts 0-11
46
47     else // invalid month or amount value
48         cout << "Invalid month or sales figure" << endl;
49 } // end function setSales
50
51

```



[Outline](#)

42

salesp.cpp (2 of 3)

Set access function performs validity checks.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.14: **SalesPerson** class member-function definitions (part 1 of 2)

```
49 } // end function setSales
50
51
52 // print total annual sales (with help of utility function)
53 void SalesPerson::printAnnualSales()
54 {
55     cout << setprecision( 2 ) << fixed
56         << "\nThe total annual sales are: $"
57         << totalAnnualSales() << endl; // call utility function
58
59 } // end function printAnnualSales
60
61 // private utility function to total annual sales
62 double SalesPerson::totalAnnualSales()
63 {
64     double total = 0.0;           // initialize total
65
66     for ( int i = 0; i < 12; i++ ) // summarize sales results
67         total += sales[ i ];
68
69     return total;
70
71 } // end function totalAnnualSales
```

▲ Outline 43  
▼ salesp.cpp (3 of 3)

private utility function to help function  
printAnnualSales; encapsulates logic of manipulating sales array.

Figure 1.15: SalesPerson class member-function definitions (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 6.11: fig06_11.cpp
2 // Demonstrating a utility function.
3 // Compile this program with salesp.cpp
4
5 // include SalesPerson class definition from salesp.h
6 #include "salesp.h"
7
8 int main()
9 {
10     SalesPerson s;           // create SalesPerson object
11
12     s.getSalesFromUser();    // note simple sequential code; no
13     s.printAnnualSales();    // control structures in main
14
15     return 0;
16
17 } // end main

```

Simple sequence of member function calls; logic encapsulated in member functions.

Outline 44  
fig06\_11.cpp (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

Enter sales amount for month 1: 5314.76
Enter sales amount for month 2: 4292.38
Enter sales amount for month 3: 4589.83
Enter sales amount for month 4: 5534.03
Enter sales amount for month 5: 4376.34
Enter sales amount for month 6: 5698.45
Enter sales amount for month 7: 4439.22
Enter sales amount for month 8: 5893.57
Enter sales amount for month 9: 4909.67
Enter sales amount for month 10: 5123.45
Enter sales amount for month 11: 4024.97
Enter sales amount for month 12: 5923.92

The total annual sales are: $60120.59

```

Outline 45  
fig06\_11.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.16: Utility function demonstration

## 1.11 Initializing Class Objects: Constructors

- Constructors
  - Initialize data members; Or can set later
  - Same name as class
  - No return type
- Initializers
  - Passed as arguments to constructor
  - In parentheses to right of class name before semicolon

```
Class-type ObjectName( value1,value2,...);
```

The programmer provides the constructor, which is then invoked each time an object of that class is created (instantiated).

## 1.12 Using Default Arguments with Constructors

- Constructors
  - Can specify default arguments
  - Default constructors
  - Defaults all arguments
  - OR
  - Explicitly requires no arguments
  - Can be invoked with no arguments
  - Only one per class

The program of Figs. 1.17-1.21 enhances class **Time** to demonstrate how arguments are implicitly passed to a constructor.

```

1 // Fig. 6.12: time2.h
2 // Declaration of class Time.
3 // Member functions defined in time2.cpp.
4
5 // prevent multiple inclusions of header file
6 #ifndef TIME2_H
7 #define TIME2_H
8
9 // Time abstract data type definition
10 class Time {
11
12 public:
13     Time( int = 0, int = 0, int = 0); // default constructor
14     void setTime( int, int, int ); // set hour, minute, second
15     void printUniversal(); // print universal-time format
16     void printStandard(); // print standard-time format
17
18 private:
19     int hour; // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
20     int minute; // 0 - 59
21     int second; // 0 - 59
22
23 }; // end class Time
24
25 #endif

```

Default constructor specifying all arguments.



Outline

48

time2.h (1 of 1)

Figure 1.17: **Time** class containing a constructor with default arguments.

```

1 // Fig. 6.13: time2.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Time.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include <iomanip>
8
9 using std::setfill;
10 using std::setw;
11
12 // include definition of class Time from time2.h
13 #include "time2.h"
14
15 // Time constructor initializes each data member to zero;
16 // ensures all Time objects start in a consistent state
17 Time::Time( int hr, int min, int sec )
18 {
19     setTime( hr, min, sec ); // validate and set time
20 }
21 // end Time constructor
22

```

49

Outline

time2.cpp (1 of 3)

Constructor calls `setTime` to validate passed (or default) values.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

23 // set new Time value using universal time, perform validity
24 // checks on the data values and set invalid values to zero
25 void Time::setTime( int h, int m, int s )
26 {
27     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
28     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 ) ? m : 0;
29     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0;
30 }
31 // end function setTime
32
33 // print Time in universal format
34 void Time::printUniversal()
35 {
36     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":" <<
37         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":" <<
38         << setw( 2 ) << second;
39 }
40 // end function printUniversal
41

```

50

Outline

time2.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.18: **Time** class member-function definitions including a constructor that takes arguments. (part 1 of 2)

```
42 // print Time in standard format
43 void Time::printStandard()
44 {
45     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
46     << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
47     << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
48     << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
49
50 } // end function printStandard
```

[Outline](#)

51

time2.cpp (3 of 3)

Figure 1.19: **Time** class member-function definitions including a constructor that takes arguments. (part 2 of 2)



```

1 // Fig. 6.14: fig06_14.cpp
2 // Demonstrating a default constructor for class Time.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 // include definition of class Time from time2.h
9 #include "time2.h"
10
11 int main()
12 {
13     Time t1;           // all arguments defaulted
14     Time t2( 2 );     // minute and second defaulted
15     Time t3( 21, 34 ); // second defaulted
16     Time t4( 12, 25, 42 ); // all values specified
17     Time t5( 27, 74, * ); // all bad values specified
18
19     cout << "Constructed with:\n\n"
20          << "all default arguments:\n ";
21     t1.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
22     cout << "\n ";
23     t1.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
24

```

52

Outline

fig06\_14.cpp  
(1 of 2)

Initialize Time objects using default arguments.

Initialize Time object with invalid values; validity checking will set values to 0.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25     cout << "\n\nhour specified; default minute and second:\n ";
26     t2.printUniversal(); // 02:00:00
27     cout << "\n ";
28     t2.printStandard(); // 2:00:00 AM
29
30     cout << "\n\nhour and minute specified; default second:\n ";
31     t3.printUniversal(); // 21:34:00
32     cout << "\n ";
33     t3.printStandard(); // 9:34:00 PM
34
35     cout << "\n\nhour, minute, and second specified:\n ";
36     t4.printUniversal(); // 12:25:42
37     cout << "\n ";
38     t4.printStandard(); // 12:25:42 PM
39
40     cout << "\n\nall invalid values specified:\n ";
41     t5.printUniversal(); // 00:00:00
42     cout << "\n ";
43     t5.printStandard(); // 12:00:00 AM
44     cout << endl;
45
46     return 0;
47
48 } // end main

```

53

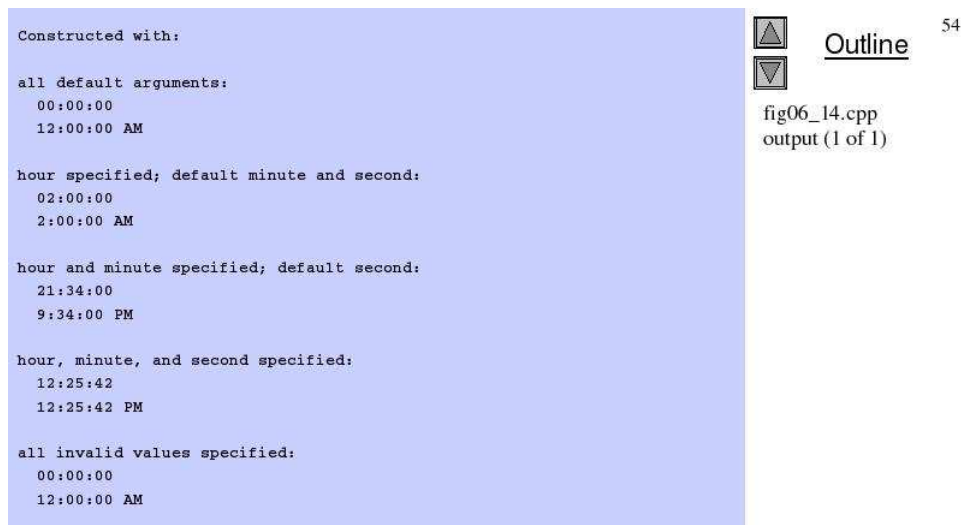
Outline

fig06\_14.cpp  
(2 of 2)

t5 constructed with invalid arguments; values set to 0.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.20: Constructor with default arguments. (part 1 of 2)



```

Constructed with:

all default arguments:
00:00:00
12:00:00 AM

hour specified; default minute and second:
02:00:00
2:00:00 AM

hour and minute specified; default second:
21:34:00
9:34:00 PM

hour, minute, and second specified:
12:25:42
12:25:42 PM

all invalid values specified:
00:00:00
12:00:00 AM

```

Figure 1.21: Constructor with default arguments. (part 2 of 2)

## 1.13 Destructors

- Special member function
- Same name as class; Preceded with tilde (~)
- No arguments
- No return value
- Cannot be overloaded
- Performs "termination housekeeping"
  - Before system reclaims object's memory; Reuse memory for new objects
- No explicit destructor; Compiler creates "empty destructor"

## 1.14 When Constructors and Destructors Are Called

- Constructors and destructors; Called implicitly by compiler
- Order of function calls
  - Depends on order of execution; When execution enters and exits scope of objects
  - Generally, destructor calls reverse order of constructor calls
- Order of constructor, destructor function calls
  - Global scope objects
    - \* Constructors; Before any other function (including **main**)
    - \* Destructors
      - When **main** terminates (or **exit** function called)
      - Not called if program terminates with **abort**
  - Automatic local objects
    - \* Constructors
      - When objects defined; Each time execution enters scope
    - \* Destructors
      - When objects leave scope; Execution exits block in which object defined
      - Not called if program ends with **exit** or **abort**
  - **static** local objects
    - \* Constructors
      - Exactly once
      - When execution reaches point where object defined
    - \* Destructors
      - When **main** terminates or **exit** function called
      - Not called if program ends with **abort**

The program of Figs. 1.22-1.25 demonstrates the order in which constructors and destructors are called for objects of class `CreateAndDestroy` of various storage classes in several scopes.

```

1 // Fig. 6.15: create.h
2 // Definition of class CreateAndDestroy.
3 // Member functions defined in create.cpp.
4 #ifndef CREATE_H
5 #define CREATE_H
6
7 class CreateAndDestroy {
8
9 public:
10     CreateAndDestroy( int, char * ); // constructor
11     ~CreateAndDestroy();
12
13 private:
14     int objectID;
15     char *message;
16
17 }; // end class CreateAndDestroy
18
19 #endif

```

Constructor and destructor member functions.

private members to show order of constructor, destructor function calls.

Outline 59  
create.h (1 of 1)

Figure 1.22: `CreateAndDestroy` class definition.

## 1.14. WHEN CONSTRUCTORS AND DESTRUCTORS ARE CALLED 53

```
1 // Fig. 6.16: create.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class CreateAndDestroy
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 // include CreateAndDestroy class definition from create.h
9 #include "create.h"
10
11 // constructor
12 CreateAndDestroy::CreateAndDestroy(
13     int objectNumber, char *messagePtr )
14 {
15     objectID = objectNumber;
16     message = messagePtr;
17
18     cout << "Object " << objectID << " constructor runs "
19         << message << endl;
20
21 } // end CreateAndDestroy constructor
22
```

60

Outline

create.cpp (1 of 2)

Output message to demonstrate timing of constructor function calls.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
23 // destructor
24 CreateAndDestroy::~CreateAndDestroy()
25 {
26     // the following line is for pedagogy
27     cout << ( objectID == 1 ? "object 1" : "object 2" )
28
29     cout << "Object " << objectID << " destructor runs "
30         << message << endl;
31
32 } // end ~CreateAndDestroy destructor
```

61

Outline

create.cpp (2 of 2)

Output message to demonstrate timing of destructor function calls.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.23: `CreateAndDestroy` class member-function definitions.

```

1 // Fig. 6.17: fig06_17.cpp
2 // Demonstrating the order in which constructors and
3 // destructors are called.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 // include CreateAndDestroy class definition from create.h
10 #include "create.h"
11
12 void create( void ); // prototype
13
14 // global object
15 CreateAndDestroy first( 1, "(global before main)" );
16
17 int main()
18 {
19     cout << "\nMAIN FUNCTION: EXECUTION RESUMES" << endl;
20
21     CreateAndDestroy second( 2, "(local automatic in main)" );
22
23     static CreateAndDestroy third(
24         3, "(local static in main)" );
25

```



Outline

62

fig06\_17.cpp  
(1 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26     create(); // call function to create objects
27
28     cout << "\nMAIN FUNCTION: EXECUTION RESUMES" << endl;
29
30     CreateAndDestroy fourth( 4, "(local automatic in main)" );
31
32     cout << "\nMAIN FUNCTION: EXECUTION ENDS" << endl;
33
34     return 0;
35
36 } // end main
37
38 // function to create objects
39 void create( void )
40 {
41     cout << "\nCREATE FUNCTION: EXECUTION RESUMES" << endl;
42
43     CreateAndDestroy fifth( 5, "(local automatic in create)" );
44
45     static CreateAndDestroy sixth(
46         6, "(local static in create)" );
47
48     CreateAndDestroy seventh(
49         7, "(local automatic in create)" );
50

```



Outline

63

fig06\_17.cpp  
(2 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.24: Order in which constructors and destructors are called. (part 1 of 2)

1.14. WHEN CONSTRUCTORS AND DESTRUCTORS ARE CALLED 55

```

51     cout << "\nCREATE FUNCTION: EXECUTION ENDS\n" << endl;
52
53 } // end function create
    
```

64

Outline

fig06\_17.cpp  
(3 of 3)

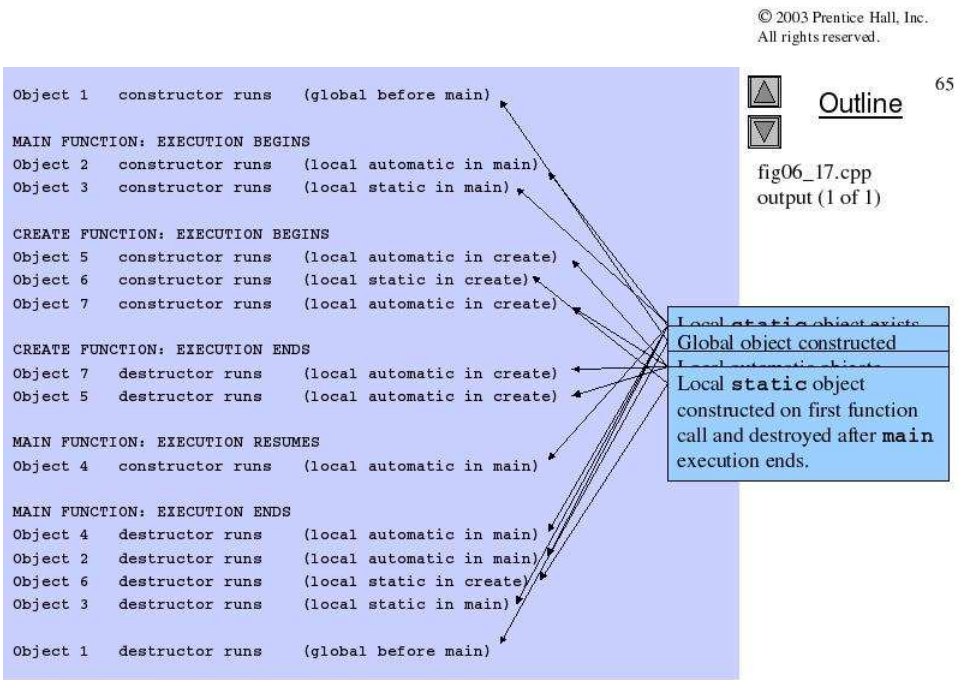


Figure 1.25: Order in which constructors and destructors are called. (part 2 of 2)

## 1.15 Using *Set* and *Get* Functions

A class's **private** data members can be accessed only by member functions (and friends) of the class. Classes often provide **public** member functions to allow clients of the class to *set* (i.e., write) or *get* (i.e., read) the values of **private** data members. These functions need not be called *set* and *get* specifically, but they often are.

- Set functions
  - Perform validity checks before modifying **private** data
  - Notify if invalid values
  - Indicate with return values
- Get functions
  - "Query" functions
  - Control format of data returned

The program of Figs. 1.26-1.30 enhances class **Time** to include *set* and *get* functions for the **private** data members **hour**, **minute**, and **second**.



```

1 // Fig. 6.18: time3.h
2 // Declaration of class Time.
3 // Member functions defined in time3.cpp
4
5 // prevent multiple inclusions of header file
6 #ifndef TIME3_H
7 #define TIME3_H
8
9 class Time {
10
11 public:
12     Time( int = 0, int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
13
14     // set functions
15     void setTime( int, int, int ); // set hour, minute, second
16     void setHour( int ); // set hour
17     void setMinute( int ); // set minute
18     void setSecond( int ); // set second
19
20     // get functions
21     int getHour(); // return hour
22     int getMinute(); // return minute
23     int getSecond(); // return second
24

```

67

Outline

time3.h (1 of 2)

Set functions.

Get functions.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25     void printUniversal(); // output universal-time format
26     void printStandard(); // output standard-time format
27
28 private:
29     int hour; // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
30     int minute; // 0 - 59
31     int second; // 0 - 59
32
33 }; // end clas Time
34
35 #endif

```

68

Outline

time3.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.26: **Time** class definition with *set* and *get* functions.

```

1 // Fig. 6.19: time3.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for Time class.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include <iomanip>
8
9 using std::setfill;
10 using std::setw;
11
12 // include definition of class Time from time3.h
13 #include "time3.h"
14
15 // constructor function to initialize private data;
16 // calls member function setTime to set variables;
17 // default values are 0 (see class definition)
18 Time::Time( int hr, int min, int sec )
19 {
20     setTime( hr, min, sec );
21 }
22 // end Time constructor
23

```


[Outline](#)

69

time3.cpp (1 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // set hour, minute and second values
25 void Time::setTime( int h, int m, int s )
26 {
27     setHour( h );
28     setMinute( m );
29     setSecond( s );
30 }
31 // end function setTime
32
33 // set hour value
34 void Time::setHour( int h )
35 {
36     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
37 }
38 // end function setHour
39
40 // set minute value
41 void Time::setMinute( int m )
42 {
43     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 ) ? m : 0;
44 }
45 // end function setMinute
46

```


[Outline](#)

70

time3.cpp (2 of 4)

Call set functions to perform  
validity checking.

Set functions perform validity  
checks before modifying data.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.27: **Time** class member-function definitions, including *set* and *get* functions. (part 1 of 2)

```

47 // set second value
48 void Time::setSecond( int s )
49 {
50     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0;
51
52 } // end function setSecond
53
54 // return hour value
55 int Time::getHour()
56 {
57     return hour;
58 } // end function getHour
59
60 // return minute value
61 int Time::getMinute()
62 {
63     return minute;
64 } // end function getMinute
65
66
67

```

Set function performs validity checks before modifying data.

Get functions allow client to read data.

Outline 71  
time3.cpp (3 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

68 // return second value
69 int Time::getSecond()
70 {
71     return second;
72 } // end function getSecond
73
74 // print Time in universal format
75 void Time::printUniversal()
76 {
77     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":"
78         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":"
79         << setw( 2 ) << second;
80 } // end function printUniversal
81
82 // print Time in standard format
83 void Time::printStandard()
84 {
85     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
86         << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
87         << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
88         << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
89 } // end function printStandard
90
91
92

```

Get function allows client to read data.

Outline 72  
time3.cpp (4 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.28: **Time** class member-function definitions, including *set* and *get* functions. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 6.20: fig06_20.cpp
2 // Demonstrating the Time class set and get functions
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 // include definition of class Time from time3.h
9 #include "time3.h"
10
11 void incrementMinutes( Time &, const int ); // prototype
12
13 int main()
14 {
15     Time t; // create Time object
16
17     // set time using individual set functions
18     t.setHour( 17 ); // set hour to valid value
19     t.setMinute( 34 ); // set minute to valid value
20     t.setSecond( 25 ); // set second to valid value
21

```

73

Outline

fig06\_20.cpp  
(1 of 3)

Invoke set functions to set valid values.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

22 // use get functions to obtain hour, minute and second
23 cout << "Result of setting all valid values:\n"
24     << " Hour: " << t.getHour()
25     << " Minute: " << t.getMinute()
26     << " Second: " << t.getSecond();
27
28 // set time using individual set functions
29 t.setHour( 234 ); // invalid hour set to 0
30 t.setMinute( 43 ); // set minute to valid value
31 t.setSecond( 6373 ); // invalid second set to 0
32
33 // display hour, minute and second after setting
34 // invalid hour and second values
35 cout << "\n\nResult of attempting to set invalid hour and"
36     << " second:\n Hour: " << t.getHour()
37     << " Minute: " << t.getMinute()
38     << " Second: " << t.getSecond() << "\n\n";
39
40 t.setTime( 11, 58, 0 ); // set time
41 incrementMinutes( t, 3 ); // increment t's minute by 3
42
43 return 0;
44
45 } // end main
46

```

74

Outline

fig06\_20.cpp  
(2 of 3)

Attempt to set invalid values using set functions.

Invalid values result in setting data members to 0.

Modify data members using function setTime.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.29: Set and get functions manipulating an object's **private** data. (part 1 of 2)

```

47 // add specified number of minutes to a Time object
48 void incrementMinutes( Time &tt, const int count )
49 {
50     cout << "Incrementing minute " << count
51         << " times:\nStart time: ";
52     tt.printStandard();
53
54     for ( int i = 0; i < count; i++ ) {
55         tt.setMinute( ( tt.getMinute() + 1 ) % 60 );
56
57         if ( tt.getMinute() == 0 )
58             tt.setHour( ( tt.getHour() + 1 ) % 24 );
59
60         cout << "\nminute + 1: ";
61         tt.printStandard();
62     } // end for
63
64     cout << endl;
65
66 } // end function incrementMinutes

```

Outline 75

fig06\_20.cpp

Using get functions to read data and set functions to modify data.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

Result of setting all valid values:
Hour: 17 Minute: 34 Second: 25

Result of attempting to set invalid hour and second:
Hour: 0 Minute: 43 Second: 0

Incrementing minute 3 times:
Start time: 11:58:00 AM
minute + 1: 11:59:00 AM
minute + 1: 12:00:00 PM
minute + 1: 12:01:00 PM

```

Outline 76

fig06\_20.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

Attempting to set data members with invalid values results in error message and members set to 0.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 1.30: *Set* and *get* functions manipulating an object's **private** data.  
(part 2 of 2)

## 1.16 Default Memberwise Assignment

The assignment operator ( $=$ ) can be used to assign an object to another object of the same type.

- Assigning objects
  - Assignment operator ( $=$ )
  - Can assign one object to another of same type
  - Default: memberwise assignment
  - Each right member assigned individually to left member
- Passing, returning objects
  - Objects passed as function arguments
  - Objects returned from functions
  - Default: pass-by-value
    - \* Copy of object passed, returned
      - Copy constructor; Copy original values into new object

Member wise assignment can cause serious problems when used with a class whose data members contain pointers to dynamically allocated storage.

```

1 // Fig. 6.24: fig06_24.cpp
2 // Demonstrating that class objects can be assigned
3 // to each other using default memberwise assignment.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 // class Date definition
10 class Date {
11
12 public:
13     Date( int = 1, int = 1, int = 1990 ); // default constructor
14     void print();
15
16 private:
17     int month;
18     int day;
19     int year;
20
21 }; // end class Date
22

```


[Outline](#)

84


 fig06\_24.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

23 // Date constructor with no range checking
24 Date::Date( int m, int d, int y )
25 {
26     month = m;
27     day = d;
28     year = y;
29
30 } // end Date constructor
31
32 // print Date in the format mm-dd-yyyy
33 void Date::print()
34 {
35     cout << month << '-' << day << '-' << year;
36
37 } // end function print
38
39 int main()
40 {
41     Date date1( 7, 4, 2002 );
42     Date date2; // date2 defaults to 1/1/1990
43

```


[Outline](#)

85


 fig06\_24.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 1.31: Default memberwise assignment. (part 1 of 2)

```

44  cout << "date1 = ";
45  date1.print();
46  cout << "\ndate2 = ";
47  date2.print();
48
49  date2 = date1; // default mem
50
51  cout << "\n\nAfter default memberwise assignment, date2 = ";
52  date2.print();
53  cout << endl;
54
55  return 0;
56
57 } // end main

```

date1 = 7-4-2002  
date2 = 1-1-1990

After default memberwise assignment, date2 = 7-4-2002

Default memberwise assignment assigns each member of `date1` individually to each member of `date2`.

Outline 86

fig06\_24.cpp (3 of 3)

fig06\_24.cpp output (1 of 1)

Figure 1.32: Default memberwise assignment. (part 2 of 2)

## 1.17 Software Reusability

- Class libraries
  - Well-defined
  - Carefully tested
  - Well-documented
  - Portable
  - Widely available
- Speeds development of powerful, high-quality software
  - Rapid applications development (RAD)
- Resulting problems
  - Cataloging schemes
  - Licensing schemes
  - Protection mechanisms



# Chapter 2

## Classes Part II

### 2.1 `const` (Constant) Objects and `const` Member Functions

Some objects need to be modifiable and some do not. The programmer may use keyword `const` to specify that an object is not modifiable and that any attempt to modify the object should result in a compiler error.

- Principle of least privilege; Only allow modification of necessary objects
- Keyword `const`
  - Specify object not modifiable
  - Compiler error if attempt to modify `const` object
  - Example
    - \* `const Time noon( 12, 0, 0 );`
    - \* Declares `const` object `noon` of class `Time`
    - \* Initializes to 12
- `const` member functions
  - Member functions for `const` objects must also be `const`; Cannot modify object
  - Specify `const` in both prototype and definition
    - \* Prototype; After parameter list
    - \* Definition; Before beginning left brace
- Constructors and destructors

- Cannot be **const**
- Must be able to modify objects
  - \* Constructor; Initializes objects
  - \* Destructor; Performs termination housekeeping

The program of Figs. 2.1-2.4 modifies class **Time** by making its *get* functions and **printUniversal** function **const**.

- Member initializer syntax
  - Initializing with member initializer syntax
    - \* Can be used for; All data members
    - \* Must be used for
      - **const** data members
      - Data members that are references

Figs. 2.4-2.6 introduces using *member initializer syntax*. Figs. 2.7-2.8 illustrates the compiler errors for a program that attempts to initialize **const** data member **increment** with an assignment statement in the **Increment** constructor's body rather than with a member initializer.

## 2.2 Composition: Objects as Members of Classes

An **AlarmClock** object needs to know when it is supposed to sound its alarm, so why not include a **Time** object as a member of the **AlarmClock** class? Such a capability is called *composition*.

- Composition; Class has objects of other classes as members
- Construction of objects; Member objects constructed in order declared
  - Not in order of constructor's member initializer list
  - Constructed before enclosing class objects (host objects)

The program of Figs. 2.9-2.14 uses class **Date** and class **Employee** to demonstrate objects as members of other objects. The colon (:) in the header separates the member initializers from the parameter list. In Fig. 2.14, when each of the **Employee**'s **Date** member object's initialized in the **Employee** constructor's member initializer list, the default copy constructor for class **Date** is called. This constructor is defined implicitly by the compiler and does not contain any output statements.

## 2.3 friend Functions and friend Classes

- friend function
  - Defined outside class's scope
  - Right to access non-public members
- Declaring friends
  - Function; Precede function prototype with keyword **friend**
  - All member functions of class **ClassTwo** as **friends** of class **ClassOne**
    - \* Place declaration of form; **friend class ClassTwo;**
    - \* in **ClassOne** definition
- Properties of friendship
  - Friendship granted, not taken
    - \* Class **B friend** of class **A**; Class **A** must explicitly declare class **B friend**

```

1 // Fig. 7.1: time5.h
2 // Definition of class Time.
3 // Member functions defined in time5.cpp.
4 #ifndef TIMES_H
5 #define TIMES_H
6
7 class Time {
8
9 public:
10     Time( int = 0, int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
11
12     // set functions
13     void setTime( int, int, int ); // set time
14     void setHour( int );           // set hour
15     void setMinute( int );         // set minute
16     void setSecond( int );         // set second
17
18     // get functions (normally declared const)
19     int getHour() const;           // return hour
20     int getMinute() const;         // return minute
21     int getSecond() const;         // return second
22
23     // print functions (normally declared const)
24     void printUniversal() const;   // print universal time
25     void printStandard();          // print standard time

```

6

Outline

time5.h (1 of 2)

Declare const get functions.

Declare const function printUniversal.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26
27 private:
28     int hour;    // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
29     int minute; // 0 - 59
30     int second; // 0 - 59
31
32 }; // end class Time
33
34 #endif

```

7

Outline

time5.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.1: **Time** class definition with **const** member functions.

```

1 // Fig. 7.2: time5.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Time.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include <iomanip>
8
9 using std::setfill;
10 using std::setw;
11
12 // include definition of class Time from time5.h
13 #include "time5.h"
14
15 // constructor function to initialize private data;
16 // calls member function setTime to set variables;
17 // default values are 0 (see class definition)
18 Time::Time( int hour, int minute, int second )
19 {
20     setTime( hour, minute, second );
21 }
22 // end Time constructor
23

```


[Outline](#)

8



time5.cpp (1 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // set hour, minute and second values
25 void Time::setTime( int hour, int minute, int second )
26 {
27     setHour( hour );
28     setMinute( minute );
29     setSecond( second );
30 }
31 // end function setTime
32
33 // set hour value
34 void Time::setHour( int h )
35 {
36     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
37 }
38 // end function setHour
39
40 // set minute value
41 void Time::setMinute( int m )
42 {
43     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 ) ? m : 0;
44 }
45 // end function setMinute
46

```


[Outline](#)

9



time5.cpp (2 of 4)



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

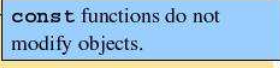
Figure 2.2: **Time** class member-function definitions, including **const** member functions. (part 1 of 2)

```

47 // set second value
48 void Time::setSecond( int s )
49 {
50     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0;
51 }
52 // end function setSecond
53
54 // return hour value
55 int Time::getHour() const
56 {
57     return hour;
58 }
59 // end function getHour
60
61 // return minute value
62 int Time::getMinute() const
63 {
64     return minute;
65 }
66 // end function getMinute
67

```

 [Outline](#) <sup>10</sup>  
 time5.cpp (3 of 4)





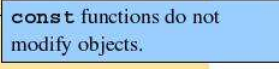
© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

68 // return second value
69 int Time::getSecond() const
70 {
71     return second;
72 }
73 // end function getSecond
74
75 // print Time in universal format
76 void Time::printUniversal() const
77 {
78     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":"
79         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":"
80         << setw( 2 ) << second;
81 }
82 // end function printUniversal
83
84 // print Time in standard format
85 void Time::printStandard() // note lack of const declaration
86 {
87     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
88         << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
89         << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
90         << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
91 }
92 // end function printStandard

```

 [Outline](#) <sup>11</sup>  
 time5.cpp (4 of 4)



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.3: **Time** class member-function definitions, including **const** member functions. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 7.3: fig07_03.cpp
2 // Attempting to access a const object with
3 // non-const member functions.
4
5 // include Time class definition from time5.h
6 #include "time5.h"
7
8 int main()
9 {
10     Time wakeUp( 6, 45, 0 ); // non-constant object
11     const Time noon( 12, 0, 0 ); // constant object
12

```

12

Outline

fig07\_03.cpp  
(1 of 2)

Declare noon a const object.

Note that non-const constructor can initialize const object.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

13
14     wakeUp.setHour( 18 ); // non-const non-const
15
16     noon.setHour( 12 ); // const non-const
17
18     wakeUp.getHour(); // non-const const
19
20     noon.getMinute(); // const const
21     noon.printUniversal(); // const const
22
23     noon.printStandard(); // const non-const
24
25     return 0;
26
27 } // end main

```

13

Outline

fig07\_03.cpp  
(2 of 2)

fig07\_03.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

Attempting to invoke non-const member function on const object results in compiler error.

Attempting to invoke non-const member function on const object results in compiler error even if function does not modify object.

```

d:\cpphtp4_examples\ch07\fig07_01\fig07_01.cpp(16) : error C2662:
'setHour' : cannot convert 'this' pointer from
to 'class Time &'
Conversion loses qualifiers
d:\cpphtp4_examples\ch07\fig07_01\fig07_01.cpp(23) : error C2662:
'printStandard' : cannot convert 'this' pointer from 'const class
Time' to 'class Time &'
Conversion loses qualifiers

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.4: **const** objects and **const** member functions.

```

1 // Fig. 7.4: fig07_04.cpp
2 // Using a member initializer to initialize a
3 // constant of a built-in data type.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 class Increment {
10
11 public:
12     Increment( int c = 0, int i = 1 ); // default constructor
13
14     void addIncrement()
15     {
16         count += increment;
17
18     } // end function addIncrement
19
20     void print() const; // prints count and increment
21

```



Outline

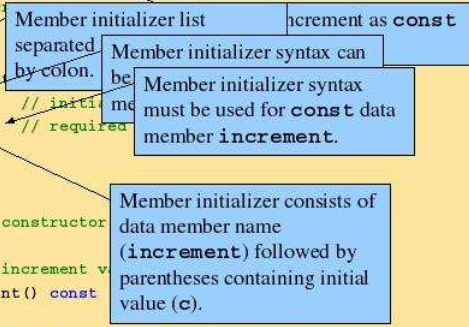
15

fig07\_04.cpp  
(1 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

22 private:
23     int count;
24     const int increment; // const data member
25
26 }; // end class Increment
27
28 // constructor
29 Increment::Increment(
30     : count( c ), // initialize count
31     increment( i ) // required
32 {
33     // empty body
34 } // end Increment constructor
35
36 // print count and increment values
37 void Increment::print() const
38 {
39     cout << "count = " << count
40         << ", increment = " << increment << endl;
41 } // end function print
42
43
44

```



Outline

16

fig07\_04.cpp  
(2 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.5: Member initializer used to initialize a constant of a built-in data type. (part 1 of 2)



```
45 int main()
46 {
47     Increment value( 10, 5 );
48
49     cout << "Before incrementing: ";
50     value.print();
51
52     for ( int j = 0; j < 3; j++ ) {
53         value.addIncrement();
54         cout << "After increment " << j + 1 << ": ";
55         value.print();
56     }
57
58     return 0;
59
60 } // end main
```

Before incrementing: count = 10, increment = 5  
After increment 1: count = 15, increment = 5  
After increment 2: count = 20, increment = 5  
After increment 3: count = 25, increment = 5



**Outline** <sup>17</sup>

- fig07\_04.cpp (3 of 3)
- fig07\_04.cpp output (1 of 1)

Figure 2.6: Member initializer used to initialize a constant of a built-in data type. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 7.5: fig07_05.cpp
2 // Attempting to initialize a constant of
3 // a built-in data type with an assignment.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 class Increment {
10
11 public:
12     Increment( int c = 0, int i = 1 ); // default constructor
13
14     void addIncrement()
15     {
16         count += increment;
17
18     } // end function addIncrement
19
20     void print() const; // prints count and increment
21

```


[Outline](#)

18

 fig07\_05.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

22 private:
23     int count;
24     const int increment; // const data member
25
26 }; // end class Increment
27
28 // constructor
29 Increment::Increment( int c, int i )
30 {
31     // Constant member
32     count = c; // allowed because count is not const
33     increment = i; // ERROR: Cannot modify a const object
34 } // end Increment constructor
35
36 // print count and increment values
37 void Increment::print() const
38 {
39     cout << "count = " << count
40         << ", increment = " << increment << endl;
41
42 } // end function print
43

```


[Outline](#)

19

 fig07\_05.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

Declare increment as **const** data member

Attempting to modify **const** data member **increment** results in error.

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 2.7: Erroneous attempt to initialize a constant of a built-in data type by assignment. (part 1 of 2)

```

44 int main()
45 {
46     Increment value( 10, 5 );
47
48     cout << "Before incrementing: ";
49     value.print();
50
51     for ( int j = 0; j < 3; j++ ) {
52         value.addIncrement();
53         cout << "After increment " << j + 1 << ": ";
54         value.print();
55     }
56
57     return 0;
58
59 } // end main

```

D:\cpphtp4\_examples\ch07\Fig07\_03\Fig07\_03.cpp(50) : error C2780: 'increment': must be initialized in constructor base/member initializer list  
D:\cpphtp4\_examples\ch07\Fig07\_03\Fig07\_03.cpp(24) : see declaration of 'increment'

D:\cpphtp4\_examples\ch07\Fig07\_03\Fig07\_03.cpp(32) : error C2166: l-value specifies const object

Outline 20

- fig07\_05.cpp (3 of 3)
- fig07\_05.cpp output (1 of 1)

Figure 2.8: Erroneous attempt to initialize a constant of a built-in data type by assignment. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 7.6: date1.h
2 // Date class definition.
3 // Member functions defined in date1.cpp
4 #ifndef DATE1_H
5 #define DATE1_H
6
7 class Date {
8
9 public:
10     Date( int = 1, int = 1, int = 1 )
11     void print() const; // print date
12     ~Date(); // provided to confirm destruction order
13
14 private:
15     int month; // 1-12 (January-December)
16     int day; // 1-31 based on month
17     int year; // any year
18
19     // utility function to test proper day for month and year
20     int checkDay( int ) const;
21
22 }; // end class Date
23
24 #endif

```

Note no constructor with parameter of type `Date`. Recall compiler provides default copy constructor.

Outline 22  
date1.h (1 of 1)

Figure 2.9: `Date` class definition.

```

1 // Fig. 7.7: date1.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Date.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 // include Date class definition from date1.h
9 #include "date1.h"
10
11 // constructor confirms proper value for month; calls
12 // utility function checkDay to confirm proper value for day
13 Date::Date( int mn, int dy, int yr )
14 {
15     if ( mn > 0 && mn <= 12 ) // validate the month
16         month = mn;
17
18     else { // invalid month set to 1
19         month = 1;
20         cout << "Month " << mn << " invalid. Set to month 1.\n";
21     }
22
23     year = yr; // should validate yr
24     day = checkDay( dy ); // validate the day
25

```


[Outline](#)

23



date1.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26 // output Date object to show when its constructor is called
27 cout << "Date object constructor for date ";
28 print();
29 cout << endl;
30
31 } // end Date constructor
32
33 // print Date object in form month/day/year
34 void Date::print() const
35 {
36     cout << month << '/' << day << '/' << year;
37
38 } // end function print
39
40 // output Date object to show when its destructor is called
41 Date::~Date()
42 {
43     cout << "Date object destructor for date ";
44     print();
45     cout << endl;
46
47 } // end destructor ~Date
48

```

No arguments; each member function contains implicit handle to object on which it operates.

Output to show timing of destructors.


[Outline](#)

24



date1.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.10: **Date** class member-function definitions. (part 1 of 2)

```
49 // utility function to confirm proper day value based on
50 // month and year; handles leap years, too
51 int Date::checkDay( int testDay ) const
52 {
53     static const int daysPerMonth[ 13 ] =
54         { 0, 31, 28, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31 };
55
56     // determine whether testDay is valid for specified month
57     if ( testDay > 0 && testDay <= daysPerMonth[ month ] )
58         return testDay;
59
60     // February 29 check for leap year
61     if ( month == 2 && testDay == 29 &&
62         ( year % 400 == 0 ||
63           ( year % 4 == 0 && year % 100 != 0 ) ) )
64         return testDay;
65
66     cout << "Day " << testDay << " invalid. Set to day 1.\n";
67
68     return 1; // leave object in consistent state if bad value
69
70 } // end function checkDay
```

[Outline](#)

25

date1.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.


Figure 2.11: **Date** class member-function definitions. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 7.8: employee1.h
2 // Employee class definition.
3 // Member functions defined in employee1.cpp.
4 #ifndef EMPLOYEE1_H
5 #define EMPLOYEE1_H
6
7 // include Date class definition from date1.h
8 #include "date1.h"
9
10 class Employee {
11
12 public:
13     Employee(
14         const char *, const char *, const Date &, const Date & );
15
16     void print() const;
17     ~Employee(); // provided to confirm destruction order
18
19 private:
20     char firstName[ 25 ];
21     char lastName[ 25 ];
22     const Date birthDate; // composition: member object
23     const Date hireDate; // composition: member object
24
25 }; // end class Employee

```

26

 Outline


employee1.h (1 of 2)

```

26
27 #endif

```

27

 Outline

employee1.h (2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 7.9: employee1.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Employee.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <cstring> // strcpy and strlen prototypes
9
10 #include "employee1.h" // Employee class definition
11 #include "date1.h" // Date class definition
12

```

employee1.cpp  
(1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.12: **Employee** class definition showing composition.

```

13 // constructor uses member initializer list to pass initializer
14 // values to constructors of member objects birthDate and
15 // hireDate [Note: This invokes the so-called "default copy
16 // constructor" which the C++ compiler provides implicitly.]
17 Employee::Employee( const char *first, const char *last,
18                   const Date &dateOfBirth, const Date &dateOfHire )
19   : birthDate( dateOfBirth ), // initialize birthDate
20     hireDate( dateOfHire )    // initialize hireDate
21 {
22     // copy first into firstName and be sure
23     int length = strlen( first );
24     length = ( length < 25 ? length : 24 );
25     strncpy( firstName, first, length );
26     firstName[ length ] = '\0';
27
28     // copy last into lastName and be sure that it fits
29     length = strlen( last );
30     length = ( length < 25 ? length : 24 );
31     strncpy( lastName, last, length );
32     lastName[ length ] = '\0';
33
34     // output Employee object to show when constructor is called
35     cout << "Employee object constructor: "
36           << firstName << " " << lastName << endl;
37

```

Member initializer syntax to initialize Date data members birthDate and hireDate; compiler uses default copy constructor.

Output to show timing of constructors.



[Outline](#)

28

employee1.cpp  
(2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

38 } // end Employee constructor
39
40 // print Employee object
41 void Employee::print() const
42 {
43     cout << lastName << ", " << firstName << "\nHired: ";
44     hireDate.print();
45     cout << " Birth date: ";
46     birthDate.print();
47     cout << endl;
48
49 } // end function print
50
51 // output Employee object to show when it
52 Employee::~Employee()
53 {
54     cout << "Employee object destructor: "
55           << lastName << ", " << firstName << endl;
56
57 } // end destructor ~Employee

```

Output to show timing of destructors.



[Outline](#)

29

employee1.cpp  
(3 of 3)



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.13: **Employee** class member-function definitions, including constructor with a member-initializer list.



```

1 // Fig. 7.10: fig07_10.cpp
2 // Demonstrating composition--an object with member objects.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "employee1.h" // Employee class definition
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     Date birth( 7, 24, 1949 );
13     Date hire( 3, 12, 1988 );
14     Employee manager( "Bob", "Jones", birth, hire );
15
16     cout << '\n';
17     manager.print();
18
19     cout << "\nTest Date constructor with invalid values:\n";
20     Date lastDayOff( 14, 35, 1994 ); // invalid month and day
21     cout << endl;
22
23     return 0;
24
25 } // end main
    
```

 **Outline** 30  
  
 fig07\_10.cpp  
 (1 of 1)

Create **Date** objects to pass to **Employee** constructor.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.



```

Date object constructor for date 7/24/1949
Date object constructor for date 3/12/1988
Employee object constructor: Bob Jones

Jones, Bob
Hired: 3/12/1988 Birth date: 7/24/1949

Test Date constructor with invalid values:
Month 14 invalid. Set to month 1.
Day 35 invalid. Set to day 1.
Date object constructor for date 1/1/1994

Date object destructor for date 1/1/1994
Employee object destructor: Jones, Bob
Date object destructor for date 3/12/1988
Date object destructor for date 7/24/1949
Date object destructor for date 3/12/1988
Date object destructor for date 7/24/1949
    
```

 **Outline** 31  
  
 10.cpp  
 t (1 of 1)

Note two additional **Date** objects constructed; no output since default copy constructor used.

D  
ma  
de  
ob  
Bi  
 Destructor for **Employee**'s  
 Destructor for **Employee**'s  
 Destructor for **Date** object  
 Destructor for **Date** object  
 birth.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.14: Member-object initializers.

- Not symmetric
  - Class **B** **friend** of class **A**
  - Class **A** not necessarily **friend** of class **B**
- Not transitive
  - Class **A** **friend** of class **B**
  - Class **B** **friend** of class **C**
  - Class **A** not necessarily **friend** of Class **C**

The program of Figs. 2.15-2.16 (top) defines friend function **setX** to set the **private** data member **x** of class **Count**. Friend declaration can appear anywhere in the class. The program of Figs. 2.16 (bottom) -2.17 demonstrates the error messages produced by the compiler when nonfriend function **cannotSetX** is called to modify **private** data member **x**.

## 2.4 Using the **this** Pointer

We have seen that an object's member functions can manipulate the object's data. How do member functions know which object's data members to manipulate? Every object has access to its own address through a pointer called **this** (a C++ keyword).

- Allows object to access own address
- Not part of object itself; Implicit argument to non-**static** member function call
- Implicitly reference member data and functions
- Type of **this** pointer depends on
  - Type of object
  - Whether member function is **const**
  - In non-**const** member function of **Employee**
    - \* **this** has type **Employee \* const** ; Constant pointer to non-constant **Employee** object
  - In **const** member function of **Employee**
    - \* **this** has type **const Employee \* const** ; Constant pointer to constant **Employee** object

```

1 // Fig. 7.11: fig07_11.cpp
2 // Friends can access private members of a class.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 // Count class definition
9 class Count {
10     friend void setX( Count &, int ); // friend declaration
11
12 public:
13
14     // constructor
15     Count()
16         : x( 0 ) // initialize x to 0
17     {
18         // empty body
19     } // end Count constructor
20
21

```

Precede function prototype with keyword **friend**.

34

Outline

fig07\_11.cpp  
(1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

22 // output x
23 void print() const
24 {
25     cout << x << endl;
26 } // end function print
27
28
29 private:
30     int x; // data member
31
32 }; // end class Count
33
34 // function setX can
35 // because setX is de
36 void setX( Count &c,
37 {
38     c.x = val; // leg
39
40 } // end function setX
41

```

Pass **Count** object since C-style standalone function.

Since **setX** friend of **Count**, can access and modify **private** data member **x**.

35

Outline

fig07\_11.cpp  
(2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.15: Friends can access **private** members of the class.

```

42 int main()
43 {
44     Count counter;           // create Count object
45
46     cout << "counter.x after instantiation: ";
47     counter.print();
48
49     setI( counter, 8 );     // set x with a friend
50
51     cout << "counter.x after call to setI friend function: ";
52     counter.print();
53
54     return 0;
55 }
56 // end main

```

counter.x after instantiation: 0  
counter.x after call to setI friend function: 8

Use friend function to access and modify private data member x.


[Outline](#)

36

fig07\_11.cpp  
(3 of 3)fig07\_11.cpp  
output (1 of 1)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 7.12: fig07_12.cpp
2 // Non-friend/non-member functions cannot access
3 // private data of a class.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 // Count class definition
10 // (note that there is no friendship declaration)
11 class Count {
12
13 public:
14
15     // constructor
16     Count()
17         : x( 0 ) // initialize x to 0
18     {
19         // empty body
20     }
21 // end Count constructor
22

```


[Outline](#)

37

fig07\_12.cpp  
(1 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.16: Nonfriend/nonmember functions cannot access **private** members. (part 1 of 2)

```

23 // output x
24 void print() const
25 {
26     cout << x << endl;
27 } // end function print
28
29
30 private:
31     int x; // data member
32
33 }; // end class Count
34
35 // function tries to modify
36 // but cannot because function is not a friend
37 void cannotSetX(Count &c, int i)
38 {
39     c.x = i; // ERROR: cannot access private member in class 'Count'
40 }
41 } // end function cannotSetX
42

```

Attempting to modify **private** data member from non-**friend** function results in error.

Outline 38

fig07\_12.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

43 int main()
44 {
45     Count counter; // create Count object
46
47     cannotSetX( counter, 3 ); // cannotSetX is not a friend
48
49     return 0;
50 } // end main
51

```

D:\cpphtp4\_examples\ch07\Fig07\_12\Fig07\_12.cpp(39) : error C2248: 'x' : cannot access private member declared in class 'Count'  
D:\cpphtp4\_examples\ch07\Fig07\_12\Fig07\_12.cpp(31) : see declaration of 'x'

Attempting to modify **private** data member from non-**friend** function results in error.

Outline 39

fig07\_12.cpp (3 of 3)

fig07\_12.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.17: Nonfriend/nonmember functions cannot access **private** members. (part 2 of 2)

The program of Figs. 2.18-2.19 demonstrates the implicit and explicit use of the **this** pointer to enable a member function of class **Test** to print the **private** data **x** of a **Test** object. The program of Figs. 2.20-2.24 modifies class **Time**'s *set* functions **setTime**, **setHour**, **setMinute** and **setSecond** such that each returns a reference to a **Time** object to enable cascaded member-function calls.

- Cascaded member function calls
  - Multiple functions invoked in same statement
  - Function returns reference pointer to same object; `{ return *this; }`
- Other functions operate on that pointer
- Functions that do not return references must be called last

```

1 // Fig. 7.13: fig07_13.cpp
2 // Using the this pointer to refer to object members.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 class Test {
9
10 public:
11     Test( int = 0 ); // default constructor
12     void print() const;
13
14 private:
15     int x;
16
17 }; // end class Test
18
19 // constructor
20 Test::Test( int value )
21     : x( value ) // initialize x to value
22 {
23     // empty body
24
25 } // end Test constructor

```



Outline

41

fig07\_13.cpp  
(1 of 3)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26
27 // print x using implicit and explicit this pointers;
28 // parentheses around *this required
29 void Test::print() const
30 {
31     // implicitly use this pointer to access member x
32     cout << "    x = " << x;
33
34     // explicitly use this pointer to access member x
35     cout << "\n this->x = " << this->x;
36
37     // explicitly use dereferenced this pointer and
38     // the dot operator to access member x
39     cout << "\n(*this).x = " << (*this).x << endl;
40
41 } // end function print
42
43 int main()
44 {
45     Test testObject( 12 );
46
47     testObject.print();
48
49     return 0;
50

```



Outline

42

fig07\_13.cpp  
(1 of 3)Implicitly use **this** pointer;  
only specify name of data  
member(x)Explicitly use **this** pointer  
with arrow operator.Explicitly use **this** pointer;  
dereference **this** pointer  
first, then use dot operator.© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.18: **this** pointer implicitly and explicitly used to access an object's members. (part 1 of 2)

```
51 } // end main
```

```
    x = 12  
    this->x = 12  
    (*this).x = 12
```



Outline 43

fig07\_13.cpp  
(3 of 3)

fig07\_13.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

Figure 2.19: **this** pointer implicitly and explicitly used to access an object's members. (part 2 of 2)



```

1 // Fig. 7.14: time6.h
2 // Cascading member function calls.
3
4 // Time class definition.
5 // Member functions defined in time6.cpp.
6 #ifndef TIME6_H
7 #define TIME6_H
8
9 class Time {
10
11 public:
12     Time( int = 0, int = 0, int = 0 );
13
14     // set functions
15     Time &setTime( int, int, int ); // set hour, minute, second
16     Time &setHour( int ); // set hour
17     Time &setMinute( int ); // set minute
18     Time &setSecond( int ); // set second
19
20     // get functions (normally declared const)
21     int getHour() const; // return hour
22     int getMinute() const; // return minute
23     int getSecond() const; // return second
24

```

Set functions return reference to **Time** object to enable cascaded member function calls.



Outline

45

time6.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25 // print functions (normally declared const)
26 void printUniversal() const; // print universal time
27 void printStandard() const; // print standard time
28
29 private:
30     int hour; // 0 - 23 (24-hour clock format)
31     int minute; // 0 - 59
32     int second; // 0 - 59
33
34 }; // end class Time
35
36 #endif

```



Outline

46

time6.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.20: **Time** class definition modified to enable cascaded member-function calls.

```

1 // Fig. 7.15: time6.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for Time class.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include <iomanip>
8
9 using std::setfill;
10 using std::setw;
11
12 #include "time6.h" // Time class definition
13
14 // constructor function to initialize private data;
15 // calls member function setTime to set variables;
16 // default values are 0 (see class definition)
17 Time::Time( int hr, int min, int sec )
18 {
19     setTime( hr, min, sec );
20 }
21 // end Time constructor
22

```


[Outline](#)

47

time6.cpp (1 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

23 // set values of hour, minute, and second
24 Time &Time::setTime( int h, int m, int s )
25 {
26     setHour( h );
27     setMinute( m );
28     setSecond( s );
29
30     return *this; // enables cascading
31 }
32 // end function setTime
33
34 // set hour value
35 Time &Time::setHour( int h )
36 {
37     hour = ( h >= 0 && h < 24 ) ? h : 0;
38
39     return *this; // enables cascading
40 }
41 // end function setHour
42

```

Return \*this as reference to enable cascaded member function calls.

Return \*this as reference to enable cascaded member function calls.


[Outline](#)

48

time6.cpp (2 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.21: **Time** class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-function calls. (part 1 of 3)

```

43 // set minute value
44 Time &Time::setMinute( int m )
45 {
46     minute = ( m >= 0 && m < 60 )
47
48     return *this; // enables cascading
49
50 } // end function setMinute
51
52 // set second value
53 Time &Time::setSecond( int s )
54 {
55     second = ( s >= 0 && s < 60 )
56
57     return *this; // enables cascading
58
59 } // end function setSecond
60
61 // get hour value
62 int Time::getHour() const
63 {
64     return hour;
65
66 } // end function getHour
67

```

Return \*this as reference to enable cascaded member function calls.

Return \*this as reference to enable cascaded member function calls.

Outline 49  
time6.cpp (3 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

68 // get minute value
69 int Time::getMinute() const
70 {
71     return minute;
72
73 } // end function getMinute
74
75 // get second value
76 int Time::getSecond() const
77 {
78     return second;
79
80 } // end function getSecond
81
82 // print Time in universal format
83 void Time::printUniversal() const
84 {
85     cout << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << hour << ":"
86         << setw( 2 ) << minute << ":"
87         << setw( 2 ) << second;
88
89 } // end function printUniversal
90

```

Outline 50  
time6.cpp (4 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.22: **Time** class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-function calls. (part 2 of 3)

```
91 // print Time in standard format
92 void Time::printStandard() const
93 {
94     cout << ( ( hour == 0 || hour == 12 ) ? 12 : hour % 12 )
95     << ":" << setfill( '0' ) << setw( 2 ) << minute
96     << ":" << setw( 2 ) << second
97     << ( hour < 12 ? " AM" : " PM" );
98
99 } // end function printStandard
```

[Outline](#)

51

time6.cpp (5 of 5)

Figure 2.23: **Time** class member-function definitions modified to enable cascaded member-function calls. (part 3 of 3)

```

1 // Fig. 7.16: fig07_16.cpp
2 // Cascading member function calls with the this pointer.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "time6.h" // Time class definition
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     Time t;
13
14     // cascaded function calls
15     t.setHour( 18 ).setMinute( 30 ).setSecond( 22 );
16
17     // output time in universal and standard formats
18     cout << "Universal time: ";
19     t.printUniversal();
20
21     cout << "\nStandard time: ";
22     t.printStandard();
23
24     cout << "\n\nNew standard time: ";
25

```

52

Outline

fig07\_16.cpp  
(1 of 2)

Cascade member function calls; recall dot operator associates from left to right.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26     // cascaded function calls
27     t.setTime( 20, 20, 20 ).printStandard();
28
29     cout << endl;
30
31     return 0;
32
33 } // end main

```

53

Outline

7\_16.cpp  
(2)

7\_16.cpp  
ut (1 of 1)

Function call to `printStandard` must appear last; `printStandard` does not return reference to `t`.

```

Universal time: 18:30:22
Standard time: 6:30:22 PM

New standard time: 8:20:20 PM

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.24: Cascading member-function calls.

## 2.5 Dynamic Memory Management with Operators `new` and `delete`

- Dynamic memory management
  - Control allocation and deallocation of memory
  - Operators `new` and `delete`
    - \* Include standard header `<new>`; Access to standard version of `new`
- `new`
  - Consider
    - \* `Time *timePtr;`
    - \* `timePtr = new Time;`
  - `new` operator
    - \* Creates object of proper size for type `Time`; Error if no space in memory for object
    - \* Calls default constructor for object
    - \* Returns pointer of specified type
  - Providing initializers
    - \* `double *ptr = new double( 3.14159 );`
    - \* `Time *timePtr = new Time( 12, 0, 0 );`
  - Allocating arrays; `int *gradesArray = new int[ 10 ];`
- `delete`
  - Destroy dynamically allocated object and free space
  - Consider; `delete timePtr;`
  - Operator `delete`
    - \* Calls destructor for object
    - \* Deallocates memory associated with object; Memory can be reused to allocate other objects
  - Deallocating arrays
    - \* `delete [] gradesArray; ;` Deallocates array to which `gradesArray` points
    - \* If pointer to array of objects
      - First calls destructor for each object in array
      - Then deallocates memory

## 2.6 static Class Members

Each object of a class has its own copy of all the **data members** of the class. in certain cases, only one copy of a variable should be shared by all objects of a class.

- **static** class variable
  - ”Class-wide” data; Property of class, not specific object of class
  - Efficient when single copy of data is enough; Only the **static** variable has to be updated
  - May seem like global variables, but have class scope; Only accessible to objects of same class
  - Initialized exactly once at file scope
  - Exist even if no objects of class exist
  - Can be **public**, **private** or **protected**
- Accessing static class variables
  - Accessible through any object of class
  - **public static** variables
    - \* Can also be accessed using binary scope resolution operator (::)
    - \* **Employee::count**
- **private static** variables
  - When no class member objects exist
    - \* Can only be accessed via **public static** member function
    - \* To call **public static** member function combine class name, binary scope resolution operator (::) and function name; **Employee::getCount()**
- static member functions
  - Cannot access non-**static** data or functions
  - No **this** pointer for **static** functions; **static** data members and **static** member functions exist independent of objects

The programs of Figs. 2.25-2.28 demonstrates a **private static** data member called **count** and a **public static** member function called **getCount**. Figure 2.28 uses function **getCount** to determine the number of **Employee** objects currently instantiated.

```

1 // Fig. 7.17: employee2.h
2 // Employee class definition.
3 #ifndef EMPLOYEE2_H
4 #define EMPLOYEE2_H
5
6 class Employee {
7
8 public:
9     Employee( const char *, const char * ); // constructor
10    ~Employee(); // destructor
11    const char *getFirstName() const; // r
12    const char *getLastName() const; // r
13
14    // static member function
15    static int getCount(); // return # obj
16
17 private:
18     char *firstName;
19     char *lastName;
20
21     // static data member
22     static int count; // number of objects instantiated
23
24 }; // end class Employee
25

```

static member function can only access **static** data members and member functions.

static data member is class-wide data.

Outline 60  
employee2.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.25: **Employee** class definition with a **static** data member to track the number **Employee** objects in memory.



```

26 #endif

```

```

1 // Fig. 7.18: employee2.cpp
2 // Member-function definitions for class Employee.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <new> // C++ standard new operator
9 #include <cstring> // strcpy and strlen prototypes
10
11 #include "employee2.h" // Employee class
12
13 // define and initialize static data member
14 int Employee::count = 0;
15
16 // define static member function that returns
17 // Employee objects instantiated
18 int Employee::getCount()
19 {
20     return count;
21 }
22 // end static function getCount

```

Initialize **static** data member exactly once at file scope.

**static** member function accesses **static** data member **count**.

61

Outline

employee2.h (2 of 2)

employee2.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

23
24 // constructor dynamically allocates space for
25 // first and last name and uses strcpy to copy
26 // first and last names into the object
27 Employee::Employee( const char *first, const char *last)
28 {
29     firstName = new char[ strlen( first ) + 1 ];
30     strcpy( firstName, first );
31
32     lastName = new char[ strlen( last ) + 1 ];
33     strcpy( lastName, last );
34     ++count; // increment static count of employees
35
36     cout << "Employee constructor for " << firstName
37         << " " << lastName << " called." << endl;
38 } // end Employee constructor
39
40 // destructor deallocates dynamically allocated memory
41 Employee::~Employee()
42 {
43     cout << "~Employee() called for " << firstName
44         << " " << lastName << endl;
45 }
46
47

```

new operator dynamically allocates space.

Use **static** data member to store total **count** of employees.

62

Outline

employee2.cpp

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.26: **Employee** class member-function definitions. (part 1 of 2)

```

48     delete [] firstName; // recapture memory
49     delete [] lastName; // recapture memory
50
51     --count; // decrement static count of employees
52
53 } // end destructor ~Emp
54
55 // return first name of employee
56 const char *Employee::getFirstName() const
57 {
58     // const before return type prevents client from modifying
59     // private data; client should copy returned string before
60     // destructor deletes storage to prevent undefined pointer
61     return firstName;
62
63 } // end function getFirstName
64
65 // return last name of employee
66 const char *Employee::getLastName() const
67 {
68     // const before return type prevents client from modifying
69     // private data; client should copy returned string before
70     // destructor deletes storage to prevent undefined pointer
71     return lastName;
72
73 } // end function getLastName

```

Use static data member to store total count of employees.

allocates

63

Outline

employee2.cpp  
(3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 7.19: fig07_19.cpp
2 // Driver to test class Employee.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <new> // C++ standard new operator
9
10 #include "employee2.h" // Employee class definition
11
12 int main()
13 {
14     cout << "Number of employees before instantiation is "
15         << Employee::getCount() << endl; // use class name
16
17     Employee *e1Ptr = new Employee(
18     Employee *e2Ptr = new Employee(
19
20     cout << "Number of employees after instantiation is "
21         << e1Ptr->getCount();
22

```

new operator dynamically allocates space.

static member function can be invoked on any object of class.

64

Outline

fig07\_19.cpp  
(1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.27: **Employee** class member-function definitions. (part 2 of 2) and static data member tracking the number of objects of a class. (part 1 of 2)

```

23     cout << "\n\nEmployee 1: "
24         << e1Ptr->getFirstName()
25         << " " << e1Ptr->getLastName()
26     << "\n\nEmployee 2: "
27         << e2Ptr->getFirstName()
28         << " " << e2Ptr->getLastName() << "\n\n";
29
30     delete e1Ptr; // recapture memory
31     e1Ptr = 0; // disconnect pointer from free-store space
32     delete e2Ptr; // recapture memory
33     e2Ptr = 0; // disconnect pointer from free-store space
34
35     cout << "Number of employees after deletion is "
36         << Employee::getCount() << endl;
37
38     return 0;
39
40 } // end main

```

static member function invoked using binary scope resolution operator (no existing class objects).

Operator memory

Outline 65

fig07\_19.cpp (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

Number of employees before instantiation is 0
Employee constructor for Susan Baker called.
Employee constructor for Robert Jones called.
Number of employees after instantiation is 2

Employee 1: Susan Baker
Employee 2: Robert Jones

~Employee() called for Susan Baker
~Employee() called for Robert Jones
Number of employees after deletion is 0

```

Outline 66

fig07\_19.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.28: **static** data member tracking the number of objects of a class. (part 2 of 2)

## 2.7 Data Abstraction and Information Hiding

- **Information hiding**
  - Classes hide implementation details from clients
  - Example: stack data structure
    - \* Data elements added (pushed) onto top
    - \* Data elements removed (popped) from top
    - \* Last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure
    - \* Client only wants LIFO data structure; Does not care how stack implemented
- **Data abstraction**; Describe functionality of class independent of implementation
- Abstract data types (ADTs)
  - Approximations/models of real-world concepts and behaviors; **int**, **float** are models for a numbers
  - Data representation
  - Operations allowed on those data
  - ADTs receive as much as attention today as structured programming did over the last two decades. (ADTs do not replace structured programming. rather, they provide an additional formalization that can further improve the program-development process.)
- C++ extensible; Standard data types cannot be changed, but new data types can be created

The job of high-level languages is to create a view convenient for programmers to use. There is no single accepted standard view—that is one reason why there are so many programming languages. Object-oriented programming in C++ presents yet another view.

The primary activity in C++ is creating new types (i.e., classes) and expressing the interactions among objects of those types.

### 2.7.1 Example: Array Abstract Data Type

An array is not much more than a pointer and some space in memory. Primitive capabilities! There are many operations that would be nice to perform with arrays, but there are not **built-in** C++. With C++ classes, the programmer can develop an array ADT is preferable to 'raw' arrays. Although the language is easy to extend with these new types, the base language itself is not changeable.

- ADT array
  - Subscript range checking
  - Arbitrary range of subscripts; Instead of having to start with 0
  - Array assignment
  - Array comparison
  - Array input/output
  - Arrays that know their sizes
  - Arrays that expand dynamically to accommodate more elements

### 2.7.2 Example: String Abstract Data Type

- Strings in C++
  - C++ does not provide built-in string data type; Maximizes performance
  - Provides mechanisms for creating and implementing string abstract data type; String ADT (Chapter 8)
  - ANSI/ISO standard **string** class (Chapter 19)

### 2.7.3 Example: Queue Abstract Data Type

A waiting line is also called a *queue*.

- Queue
  - FIFO; First in, first out
  - Enqueue; Put items in queue one at a time
  - Dequeue; Remove items from queue one at a time
- Queue ADT

- Implementation hidden from clients; Clients may not manipulate data structure directly
- Only queue member functions can access internal data
- Queue ADT (Chapter 15)
- Standard library **queue** class (Chapter 20)

The queue ADT guarantees the integrity of its internal data structure. Clients may not manipulate this data structure directly. Only the queue member functions have access to its internal data.

## 2.8 Container Classes and Iterators

- Container classes (collection classes)
  - Designed to hold collections of objects
  - Common services; Insertion, deletion, searching, sorting, or testing an item
  - Examples; Arrays, stacks, queues, trees and linked lists
- Iterator objects (iterators)
  - Returns next item of collection; Or performs some action on next item
  - Can have several iterators per container; Book with multiple bookmarks
  - Each iterator maintains own "position"
  - Discussed further in Chapter 20

## 2.9 Proxy Classes

Sometimes, it is desirable to hide the implementation details of a class to prevent access to proprietary information (including private data) and proprietary program logic in a class. Providing clients of your class with a **proxy class** that knows only the public interface to your class enables the clients to use your class's services without giving the client access to your class's implementation details.

- Proxy class

- Hide implementation details of another class
- Knows only **public** interface of class being hidden
- Enables clients to use class's services without giving access to class's implementation
- Forward class declaration
  - Used when class definition only uses pointer to another class
  - Prevents need for including header file
  - Declares class before referencing
  - Format: **class ClassToLoad;**

Implementation of a proxy class is demonstrated in Figs. 2.29-2.31.

```

1 // Fig. 7.20: implementation.h
2 // Header file for class Implementation
3
4 class Implementation {
5
6 public:
7
8     // constructor
9     Implementation( int v )
10        : value( v ) // initialize value with v
11    {
12        // empty body
13    } // end Implementation constructor
14
15    // set value to v
16    void setValue( int v )
17    {
18        value = v; // should validate v
19    } // end function setValue
20
21
22

```

74

Outline

implementation.h  
(1 of 2)

public member function.

```

23 // return value
24 int getValue() const
25 {
26     return value;
27 } // end function getValue
28
29 private:
30 int value;
31
32
33 }; // end class Implementation

```

75

Outline

implementation.h  
(2 of 2)

public member function.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.29: Implementation class definition.



```

1 // Fig. 7.21: interface.h
2 // Header file for interface.cpp
3
4 class Implementation; // forward class declaration
5
6 class Interface {
7
8 public:
9     Interface( int );
10    void setValue( int ); // same public interface as class Implementation
11    int getValue() const; // class Implementation
12    ~Interface();
13
14 private:
15
16    // requires previous forward declaration
17    Implementation *ptr;
18
19 }; // end class Interface
    
```

76 [Outline](#)

interface.h (1 of 1)

Provide same public interface as class Implementation; recall setValue and getValue only public member functions.

Pointer to Implementation object requires forward class declaration.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 7.22: interface.cpp
2 // Definition of class Interface
3 #include "interface.h" // Interface class definition
4 #include "implementation.h" // Implementation class definition
5
6 // constructor
7 Interface::Interface( int v ) : ptr ( new Implementation( v ) ) // includes header file for class Implementation
8 {
9     // empty body
10 } // end Interface constructor
11
12 // call Implementation's setValue function
13 void Interface::setValue( int v )
14 {
15     ptr->setValue( v ); // Invoke corresponding function on underlying Implementation object.
16 } // end function setValue
17
18
19
20
    
```

77 [Outline](#)

interface.cpp (1 of 2)

Maintain pointer to underlying Implementation object.

Invoke corresponding function on underlying Implementation object.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 2.30: Interface class definition.

```

21 // call Implementation's getValue function
22 int Interface::getValue() const
23 {
24     return ptr->getValue();
25 }
26 // end function getValue
27
28 // destructor
29 Interface::~Interface()
30 {
31     delete ptr;
32 }
33 // end destructor ~Interface

```

Invoke corresponding function on underlying Implementation object.

Deallocate underlying Implementation object.

interface.cpp (2 of 2)

Outline 78

```

1 // Fig. 7.23: fig07_23.cpp
2 // Hiding a class's private data with a proxy class.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "interface.h" // Interface class
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     Interface i( 5 );
13
14     cout << "Interface contains: " << i.getValue()
15         << " before setValue" << endl;
16
17     i.setValue( 10 );
18
19     cout << "Interface contains: " << i.getValue()
20         << " after setValue" << endl;
21
22     return 0;
23 }

```

Only include proxy class header file.

Create object of proxy class **Interface**; note no mention of **Implementation** class.

Invoke member functions via proxy class object.

```

Interface contains: 5 before setValue
Interface contains: 10 after setValue

```

fig07\_23.cpp (1 of 1)

fig07\_23.cpp output (1 of 1)

Outline 79

Figure 2.31: **Interface** class member-function definitions and Implementing a proxy class.

# Chapter 3

## Operator Overloading

### 3.1 Introduction

Manipulations on objects were accomplished by sending messages (in the form of member-function calls) to the object.

- Use operators with objects (operator overloading)
  - Clearer than function calls for certain classes
  - Operator sensitive to context
- Examples
  - `<<`; Stream insertion, bitwise left-shift
  - `+`; Performs arithmetic on multiple types (integers, floats, etc.)

### 3.2 Fundamentals of Operator Overloading

C++ programming is a type-sensitive and type-focused process. Operators provide programmers with a concise notation for expressing manipulations of objects of built-in types.

- Types
  - Built in (**int**, **char**) or user-defined
  - Can use existing operators with user-defined types; Cannot create new operators
- Overloading operators

- Create a function for the class
- Name function **operator** followed by symbol; **Operator+** for the addition operator `+`
- Using operators on a class object
  - It must be overloaded for that class
    - \* Exceptions:
    - \* Assignment operator, `=`; Memberwise assignment between objects
    - \* Address operator, `&`; Returns address of object
    - \* Both can be overloaded
  - Overloading provides concise notation
    - `object2 = object1.add(object2);`
    - `object2 = object2 + object1;`

Overloading is especially appropriate for mathematical classes. These often require that a substantial set of operators be overloaded to ensure consistency with the way these mathematical classes are handled in the real world. Operator overloading is not automatic, however; the programmer must write operator-overloading functions to perform the desired operations. Sometimes these functions are best made member functions; sometimes they are best as **friend** functions; occasionally they can be made non-member, non-**friend** functions.

### 3.3 Restrictions on Operator Overloading

Most of C++'s operators can be overloaded.

- Cannot change
  - How operators act on built-in data types; i.e., cannot change integer addition
  - Precedence of operator (order of evaluation); Use parentheses to force order-of-operations
  - Associativity (left-to-right or right-to-left)
  - Number of operands; `&` is unitary, only acts on one operand

- Cannot create new operators
- Operators must be overloaded explicitly; Overloading `+` does not overload `+=`

### 3.4 Operator Functions As Class Members Vs. As Friend Functions

- Operator functions
  - Member functions
    - \* Use **this** keyword to implicitly get argument
    - \* Gets left operand for binary operators (like `+`)
    - \* Leftmost object must be of same class as operator
  - Non member functions
    - \* Need parameters for both operands
    - \* Can have object of different class than operator
    - \* Must be a **friend** to access **private** or **protected** data
  - Called when
    - \* Left operand of binary operator of same class
    - \* Single operand of unitary operator of same class
- Overloaded `<<` operator
  - Left operand of type **ostream &**; Such as **cout** object in **cout << classObject**
  - Similarly, overloaded `>>` needs **istream &**
  - Thus, both must be non-member functions
- Commutative operators
  - May want `+` to be commutative; So both "**a + b**" and "**b + a**" work
  - Suppose we have two different classes
  - Overloaded operator can only be member function when its class is on left
    - \* **HugeIntClass + Long int**

- \* Can be member function
- When other way, need a non-member overload function; **Long int**  
+ **HugeIntClass**

### 3.5 Overloading Stream-Insertion and Stream-Extraction Operators

- << and >>
  - Already overloaded to process each built-in type
  - Can also process a user-defined class
- Example program
  - Class **PhoneNumber**; Holds a telephone number
  - Print out formatted number automatically; **(123) 456-7890**

The program of Figs. 3.1-3.2 demonstrates overloading the stream-extraction and stream-insertion operators to handle data of a user-defined telephone number class called **PhoneNumber**.

### 3.6 Overloading Unary Operators

- Overloading unary operators
  - Non-**static** member function, no arguments
  - Non-member function, one argument; Argument must be class object or reference to class object
  - Remember, **static** functions only access **static** data

```

1 // Fig. 8.3: fig08_03.cpp
2 // Overloading the stream-insertion and
3 // stream-extraction operators.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::cin;
8 using std::endl;
9 using std::ostream;
10 using std::istream;
11
12 #include <iomanip>
13
14 using std::setw;
15
16 // PhoneNumber class definition
17 class PhoneNumber {
18     friend ostream &operator<<(
19     friend istream &operator>>(
20
21 private:
22     char areaCode[ 4 ]; // 3-d
23     char exchange[ 4 ]; // 3-digit exchange and null
24     char line[ 5 ]; // 4-digit line and null
25
26 }; // end class PhoneNumber

```

Notice function prototypes for overloaded operators >> and << They must be non-member **friend** functions, since the object of class **PhoneNumber** appears on the right of the operator.

**cin << object**  
**cout >> object**

Outline 11  
fig08\_03.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved.

Figure 3.1: Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators. (part 1 of 2)

- Upcoming example (8.10)
  - Overload ! to test for empty string
  - If non-**static** member function, needs no arguments
    - \* !s becomes **s.operator!()**
    - \* **class String { public: bool operator!() const; ... };**
- If non-member function, needs one argument
  - **s!** becomes **operator!(s)**
  - **class String { friend bool operator!( const String & ) ... }**

### 3.7 Overloading Binary Operators

- Overloading binary operators

```

27
28 // overloaded stream-insertion operator; cannot be
29 // a member function if we would like to invoke it with
30 // cout << somePhoneNumber;
31 ostream &operator<<( ostream &cout, const PhoneNumber &num )
32 {
33     output << "(" << num.areaCode << " ) "
34         << num.exchange << " - " << num.line;
35
36     return output; // enables cout << a << b << c;
37
38 } // end function operator<<
39
40 // overloaded stream-extraction operator; cannot be
41 // a member function if we would like to invoke it with
42 // cin >> somePhoneNumber;
43 istream &operator>>( istream &input, const PhoneNumber &num )
44 {
45     input.ignore(); // skip (
46     input >> setw( 4 ) >> num.areaCode; // input are
47     input.ignore( 2 );
48     input >> setw( 4 ) >> num.exchange;
49     input.ignore();
50     input >> setw( 5 ) >> num.line;
51
52     return input; // enables cin >>

```

Outline 12

fig08\_03.cpp  
(2 of 3)

The expression:  
`cout << phone;`  
is interpreted as the function call:  
`operator<<(cout, phone);`  
`output` is an alias for `cout`.

This allows objects to be cascaded.  
`<< phone1 << phone2;`  
calls  
`operator<<(cout, phone1)`, and  
returns `cout`.  
Next, `cout << phone2` executes.

`ignore()` skips specified  
number of characters from  
input (1 by default).

Stream manipulator `setw`  
restricts number of characters  
read. `setw(4)` allows 3  
characters to be read, leaving  
room for the null character.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

53
54 } // end function operator>>
55
56 int main()
57 {
58     PhoneNumber phone; // create object phone
59
60     cout << "Enter phone number in the form (123) 456-7890:\n";
61
62     // cin >> phone invokes operator>> by implicitly issuing
63     // the non-member function call operator>>( cin, phone )
64     cin >> phone;
65
66     cout << "The phone number entered was: " ;
67
68     // cout << phone invokes operator<< by implicitly issuing
69     // the non-member function call operator<<( cout, phone )
70     cout << phone << endl;
71
72     return 0;
73
74 } // end main

```

Outline 13

fig08\_03.cpp  
(3 of 3)

fig08\_03.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

```

Enter phone number in the form (123) 456-7890:
(800) 555-1212
The phone number entered was: (800) 555-1212

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.2: Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators.  
(part 2 of 2)



- Non-**static** member function, one argument
- Non-member function, two arguments
- One argument must be class object or reference
- Upcoming example
  - If non-**static** member function, needs one argument
    - \* **class** **String** {
    - \* **public**:
    - \* **const** **String** &**operator**+=( **const** **String** & );
    - \* ...
    - \* };
  - **y** += **z** equivalent to **y.operator**+=( **z** )

### 3.8 Case Study: Array class

- Arrays in C++
  - No range checking
  - Cannot be compared meaningfully with ==
  - No array assignment (array names **const** pointers)
  - Cannot input/output entire arrays at once; One element at a time
- Example: Implement an Array class with
  - Range checking
  - Array assignment
  - Arrays that know their size
  - Outputting/inputting entire arrays with << and >>
  - Array comparisons with == and !=
- Copy constructor
  - Used whenever copy of object needed
    - \* Passing by value (return value or parameter)
    - \* Initializing an object with a copy of another; **Array newArray( oldArray );**

- \* **newArray** copy of **oldArray**
- Prototype for class **Array**
  - \* **Array( const Array & );**
  - \* *Must* take reference
    - Otherwise, pass by value
    - Tries to make copy by calling copy constructor ...
    - Infinite loop

The program of Figs. 3.3-3.11 demonstrates class **Array** and its overloaded operators.

```

1 // Fig. 8.4: array1.h
2 // Array class for storing arrays of integers.
3 #ifndef ARRAY1_H
4 #define ARRAY1_H
5
6 #include <iostream>
7
8 using std::ostream;
9 using std::istream;
10
11 class Array {
12     friend ostream &operator<<( ostream &, const Array & );
13     friend istream &operator>>( istream &, Array & );
14
15 public:
16     Array( int = 10 );           // default constructor
17     Array( const Array & );     // copy constructor
18     ~Array();                  // destructor
19     int getSize() const;       // return size
20
21     // assignment operator
22     const Array &operator=( const Array & );
23
24     // equality operator
25     bool operator==( const Array & ) const;
26

```

Most operators overloaded as member functions (except << and >>, which must be non-member functions).

Prototype for copy constructor.

Outline 20  
array1.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

27 // inequality operator; returns opposite of == operator
28 bool operator!=( const Array &right ) const
29 {
30     return ! ( *this == right ); // invokes Array::operator==
31
32 } // end function operator!=
33
34 // subscript operator for non-const objects
35 int &operator[]( int );
36
37 // subscript operator for const objects returns rvalue
38 const int &operator[]( int ) const;
39
40 private:
41     int size; // array size
42     int *ptr; // pointer to first element of array
43
44 }; // end class Array
45
46 #endif

```

I = operator simply returns opposite of == operator. Thus, only need to define the == operator.

Outline 21  
array1.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.3: Array class definition with overloaded operators.

```

1 // Fig 8.5: array1.cpp
2 // Member function definitions for class Array
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::cin;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setw;
12
13 #include <new> // C++ standard "new" operator
14
15 #include <cstdlib> // exit function prototype
16
17 #include "array1.h" // Array class definition
18
19 // default constructor for class Array (default size 10)
20 Array::Array( int arraySize )
21 {
22     // validate arraySize
23     size = ( arraySize > 0 ? arraySize : 10 );
24
25     ptr = new int[ size ]; // create space for array
26
27     for ( int i = 0; i < size; i++ )
28         ptr[ i ] = 0; // initialize array
29
30 } // end Array default constructor
31
32 // copy constructor for class Array;
33 // must receive a reference to pre
34 Array::Array( const Array &arrayTo
35 : size( arrayToCopy.size )
36 {
37     ptr = new int[ size ]; // create space for array
38
39     for ( int i = 0; i < size; i++ )
40         ptr[ i ] = arrayToCopy.ptr[ i ]; // copy into object
41
42 } // end Array copy constructor
43
44 // destructor for class Array
45 Array::~Array()
46 {
47     delete [] ptr; // reclaim array space
48
49 } // end destructor
50

```

22

[Outline](#)

array1.cpp (1 of 7)

23

[Outline](#)

array1.cpp (2 of 7)

We must declare a new integer array so the objects do not point to the same memory.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.


Figure 3.4: **Array** class member- and friend-function definitions. (part 1 of 4)


```

51 // return size of array
52 int Array::getSize() const
53 {
54     return size;
55 }
56 } // end function getSize
57
58 // overloaded assignment operator
59 // const return avoids: ( a1 = a2 ) = a3
60 const Array &Array::operator=( const Array &right )
61 {
62     if ( &right != this ) { // check for self-assignment
63
64         // for arrays of different sizes, deallocate original
65         // left-side array, then allocate new left-side array
66         if ( size != right.size ) {
67             delete [] ptr; // reclaim space
68             size = right.size; // resize this object
69             ptr = new int[ size ]; // create space for array copy
70         }
71     } // end inner if
72
73     for ( int i = 0; i < size; i++ )
74         ptr[ i ] = right.ptr[ i ]; // copy array into object
75
76 } // end outer if

```

24

 [Outline](#)

 array1.cpp (3 of 7)


© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.


```

77
78     return *this; // enables x = y = z, for example
79
80 } // end function operator=
81
82 // determine if two arrays are equal and
83 // return true, otherwise return false
84 bool Array::operator==( const Array &right ) const
85 {
86     if ( size != right.size )
87         return false; // arrays of different sizes
88
89     for ( int i = 0; i < size; i++ )
90
91         if ( ptr[ i ] != right.ptr[ i ] )
92             return false; // arrays are not equal
93
94     return true; // arrays are equal
95
96 } // end function operator==
97

```

25

 [Outline](#)

 array1.cpp (4 of 7)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.5: **Array** class member- and friend-function definitions. (part 2 of 4)

```

98 // overloaded subscript operator for non-const Arrays
99 // reference return creates an lvalue
100 int &Array::operator[] ( int subscript )
101 {
102     // check for subscript out of range error
103     if ( subscript < 0 || subscript >= size )
104         cout << "\nError: Subscript " << subscript
105             << " out of range" << endl;
106
107     exit ( 1 ); // terminate program; subscript out of range
108
109 } // end if
110
111 return ptr[ subscript ]; // reference return
112
113 } // end function operator[]
114

```

array1.cpp (5 of 7)

Outline 26

integers1[5] calls integers1.operator[] ( 5 )

exit () (header <cstdlib>) ends the program.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

115 // overloaded subscript operator for const Arrays
116 // const reference return creates an rvalue
117 const int &Array::operator[] ( int subscript ) const
118 {
119     // check for subscript out of range error
120     if ( subscript < 0 || subscript >= size ) {
121         cout << "\nError: Subscript " << subscript
122             << " out of range" << endl;
123
124         exit ( 1 ); // terminate program; subscript out of range
125
126     } // end if
127
128     return ptr[ subscript ]; // const reference return
129
130 } // end function operator[]
131
132 // overloaded input operator for class Array;
133 // inputs values for entire array
134 istream &operator>>( istream &input, Array &a )
135 {
136     for ( int i = 0; i < a.size; i++ )
137         input >> a.ptr[ i ];
138
139     return input; // enables cin >> x >> y;
140
141 } // end function

```


array1.cpp (6 of 7)

Outline 27

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.6: **Array** class member-and friend-function definitions. (part 3 of 4)

```
142
143 // overloaded output operator for class Array
144 ostream &operator<<( ostream &output, const Array &a )
145 {
146     int i;
147
148     // output private ptr-based array
149     for ( i = 0; i < a.size; i++ ) {
150         output << setw( 12 ) << a.ptr[ i ];
151
152         if ( ( i + 1 ) % 4 == 0 ) // 4 numbers per row of output
153             output << endl;
154
155     } // end for
156
157     if ( i % 4 != 0 ) // end last line of output
158         output << endl;
159
160     return output; // enables cout << x << y;
161
162 } // end function operator<<
```



[Outline](#) <sup>28</sup>

array1.cpp (7 of 7)

Figure 3.7: Overloaded stream-insertion and stream extraction operators.  
(part 4 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 8.6: fig08_06.cpp
2 // Array class test program.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::cin;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 #include "array1.h"
10
11 int main()
12 {
13     Array integers1( 7 ); // seven-element Array
14     Array integers2;     // 10-element Array by default
15
16     // print integers1 size and contents
17     cout << "Size of array integers1 is "
18         << integers1.getSize()
19         << "\nArray after initialization:\n" << integers1;
20
21     // print integers2 size and contents
22     cout << "\nSize of array integers2 is "
23         << integers2.getSize()
24         << "\nArray after initialization:\n" << integers2;
25

```


[Outline](#)

29

 fig08\_06.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

26 // input and print integers1 and integers2
27 cout << "\nInput 17 integers:\n";
28 cin >> integers1 >> integers2;
29
30 cout << "\nAfter input, the arrays contain:\n"
31     << "integers1:\n" << integers1
32     << "integers2:\n" << integers2;
33
34 // use overloaded inequality (!=) operator
35 cout << "\nEvaluating: integers1 != integers2\n";
36
37 if ( integers1 != integers2 )
38     cout << "integers1 and integers2 are not equal\n";
39
40 // create array integers3 using integers1 as an
41 // initializer; print size and contents
42 Array integers3( integers1 ); // calls copy constructor
43
44 cout << "\nSize of array integers3 is "
45     << integers3.getSize()
46     << "\nArray after initialization:\n" << integers3;
47

```


[Outline](#)

30


 fig08\_06.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 3.8: Array class test program. (part 1 of 2)



```
48 // use overloaded assignment (=) operator
49 cout << "\nAssigning integers2 to integers1:\n";
50 integers1 = integers2; // note target is smaller
51
52 cout << "integers1:\n" << integers1
53     << "integers2:\n" << integers2;
54
55 // use overloaded equality (==) operator
56 cout << "\nEvaluating: integers1 == integers2\n";
57
58 if ( integers1 == integers2 )
59     cout << "integers1 and integers2 are equal\n";
60
61 // use overloaded subscript operator to create rvalue
62 cout << "\nintegers1[5] is " << integers1[ 5 ];
63
64 // use overloaded subscript operator to create lvalue
65 cout << "\n\nAssigning 1000 to integers1[5]\n";
66 integers1[ 5 ] = 1000;
67 cout << "integers1:\n" << integers1;
68
69 // attempt to use out-of-range subscript
70 cout << "\n\nAttempt to assign 1000 to integers1[15]" << endl;
71 integers1[ 15 ] = 1000; // ERROR: out of range
72
73 return 0;
74
75 } // end main
```



[Outline](#) 31

fig08\_06.cpp  
(3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.9: Array class test program. (part 2 of 2)

```

Size of array integers1 is 7
Array after initialization:
    0      0      0      0
    0      0      0      0

Size of array integers2 is 10
Array after initialization:
    0      0      0      0
    0      0      0      0
    0      0

Input 17 integers:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17

After input, the arrays contain:
integers1:
    1      2      3      4
    5      6      7
integers2:
    8      9      10     11
    12     13     14     15

```


[Outline](#)

32

 fig08\_06.cpp  
 output (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

Evaluating: integers1 != integers2
integers1 and integers2 are not equal

Size of array integers3 is 7
Array after initialization:
    1      2      3      4
    5      6      7

Assigning integers2 to integers1:
integers1:
    8      9      10     11
    12     13     14     15
    16     17
integers2:
    8      9      10     11
    12     13     14     15
    16     17

Evaluating: integers1 == integers2
integers1 and integers2 are equal

integers1[5] is 13

```


[Outline](#)

33

 fig08\_06.cpp  
 output (2 of 3)


 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.10: **Array** class test program, output. (part 1 of 2)

```
Assigning 1000 to integers1[5]
integers1:
      8      9      10      11
     12     1000     14     15
     16      17

Attempt to assign 1000 to integers1[15]

Error: Subscript 15 out of range
```



[Outline](#) 34

fig08\_06.cpp  
output (3 of 3)

Figure 3.11: **Array** class test program, output. (part 2 of 2)

### 3.9 Converting between Types

Sometimes all the operations "stay within a type".

- Casting
  - Traditionally, cast integers to floats, etc.
  - May need to convert between user-defined types
- Cast operator (conversion operator)
  - Convert from
    - \* One class to another
    - \* Class to built-in type (**int**, **char**, etc.)
  - Must be non-**static** member function; Cannot be **friend**
  - Do not specify return type; implicitly returns type to which you are converting
- Example
  - Prototype
    - \* **A::operator char \*() const;**
    - \* Casts class **A** to a temporary **char \***
    - \* **(char \*)s** calls **s.operator char\*()**
  - Also, overloaded cast-operator functions can be defined for converting objects of user-defined types into built-in types or into objects of other user-defined types.
    - \* **A::operator int() const;**
    - \* **A::operator OtherClass() const;**
- Casting can prevent need for overloading
  - Suppose class **String** can be cast to **char \***
  - **cout << s; // s is a String**
    - \* Compiler implicitly converts **s** to **char \***
    - \* Do not have to overload **<<**

## 3.10 Case Study: A String Class

- Build class `String`
  - To handle `String` creation, manipulation
  - Class **`string`** in standard library (more Chapter 15)
- Conversion constructor
  - Single-argument constructor
  - Turns objects of other types into class objects
    - \* **`String s1("hi");`**
    - \* Creates a **`String`** from a **`char *`**
  - Any single-argument constructor is a conversion constructor

The programs of Figs. 3.12-3.21 demonstrates the building of our own **`String`** class to handle the creation and manipulation of strings.

```

1 // Fig. 8.7: string1.h
2 // String class definition.
3 #ifndef STRING1_H
4 #define STRING1_H
5
6 #include <iostream>
7
8 using std::ostream;
9 using std::istream;
10
11 class String {
12     friend ostream &operator<<( ostream
13     friend istream &operator>>( istream
14
15 public:
16     String( const char * = "" ); // conversion/default ctor
17     String( const String & ); // copy constructor
18     ~String(); // destructor
19
20     const String &operator=( const String & ); //
21     const String &operator+=( const String & ); //
22
23     bool operator!() const; // i
24     bool operator==( const String & ) const; // t
25     bool operator<( const String & ) const; // t
26

```

Conversion constructor to make a **String** from a **char \***.

**s1 += s2** interpreted as **s1.operator+=(s2)**

Can also concatenate a **String** and a **char \*** because the compiler will cast the **char \*** argument to a **String**. However, it can only do 1 level of casting.

Outline 39  
string1.h (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

27 // test s1 != s2
28 bool operator!=( const String &right ) const
29 {
30     return !( *this == right );
31 } // end function operator!=
32
33 // test s1 > s2
34 bool operator>( const String &right ) const
35 {
36     return right < *this;
37 } // end function operator>
38
39 // test s1 <= s2
40 bool operator<=( const String &right ) const
41 {
42     return !( right < *this );
43 } // end function operator <=
44
45 // test s1 >= s2
46 bool operator>=( const String &right ) const
47 {
48     return !( *this < right );
49 } // end function operator>=
50
51
52
53

```

Outline 40  
string1.h (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.12: **String** class definition with operator overloading. (part 1 of 2)

```

54 char &operator[]( int );
55 const char &operator[]( int ) const;
56
57
58 String operator()( int, int );
59
60 int getLength() const;
61
62 private:
63     int length; // string length
64     char *sPtr; // pointer to start of string
65
66     void setString( const char * ); // utility function
67
68 }; // end class String
69
70 #endif

```

Two overloaded subscript operators, for **const** and non-**const** objects.

Overload the function call operator () to return a substring. This operator can have any amount of operands.

Outline 41  
string1.h (3 of 3)

Figure 3.13: **String** class definition with operator overloading. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 8.8: string1.cpp
2 // Member function definitions for class String.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <iomanip>
9
10 using std::setw;
11
12 #include <new> // C++ standard "new" operator
13
14 #include <cstring> // strcpy and strcat prototypes
15 #include <cstdlib> // exit prototype
16
17 #include "string1.h" // String class definition
18
19 // conversion constructor converts char * to String
20 String::String( const char *s )
21 : length( strlen( s ) )
22 {
23     cout << "Conversion constructor: " << s << '\n';
24     setString( s ); // call utility function
25 }
26 // end String conversion constructor

```


[Outline](#)

42

string1.cpp (1 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

27
28 // copy constructor
29 String::String( const String &copy )
30 : length( copy.length )
31 {
32     cout << "Copy constructor: " << copy.sPtr << '\n';
33     setString( copy.sPtr ); // call utility function
34 }
35 // end String copy constructor
36
37 // destructor
38 String::~String()
39 {
40     cout << "Destructor: " << sPtr << '\n';
41     delete [] sPtr; // reclaim string
42 }
43 // end ~String destructor
44
45 // overloaded = operator; avoids self assignment
46 const String &String::operator=( const String &right )
47 {
48     cout << "operator= called\n";
49
50     if ( &right != this ) { // avoid self assignment
51         delete [] sPtr; // prevents memory leak
52         length = right.length; // new String length
53         setString( right.sPtr ); // call utility function
54     }

```


[Outline](#)

43

string1.cpp (2 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.14: **String** class member-function and **friend**-function definition.  
(part 1 of 4)



```

55
56     else
57         cout << "Attempted assignment of a String to itself\n";
58
59     return *this; // enables cascaded assignments
60
61 } // end function operator=
62
63 // concatenate right operand to this object and
64 // store in this object.
65 const String &String::operator+=( const String &right )
66 {
67     size_t newLength = length + right.length; // new length
68     char *tempPtr = new char[ newLength + 1 ]; // create memory
69
70     strcpy( tempPtr, sPtr ); // copy sPtr
71     strcpy( tempPtr + length, right.sPtr ); // copy right.sPtr
72
73     delete [] sPtr; // reclaim old space
74     sPtr = tempPtr; // assign new array to sPtr
75     length = newLength; // assign new length to length
76
77     return *this; // enables cascaded calls
78
79 } // end function operator+=
80

```


[Outline](#)

44



string1.cpp (3 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

81 // is this String empty?
82 bool String::operator!() const
83 {
84     return length == 0;
85
86 } // end function operator!
87
88 // is this String equal to right String?
89 bool String::operator==( const String &right ) const
90 {
91     return strcmp( sPtr, right.sPtr ) == 0;
92
93 } // end function operator==
94
95 // is this String less than right String?
96 bool String::operator<( const String &right ) const
97 {
98     return strcmp( sPtr, right.sPtr ) < 0;
99
100 } // end function operator<
101

```


[Outline](#)

45



string1.cpp (4 of 8)



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.15: **String** class member-function and **friend**-function definition.  
(part 2 of 4)

```

102 // return reference to character in String as lvalue
103 char &String::operator[]( int subscript )
104 {
105     // test for subscript out of range
106     if ( subscript < 0 || subscript >= length ) {
107         cout << "Error: Subscript " << subscript
108             << " out of range" << endl;
109
110         exit( 1 ); // terminate program
111     }
112
113     return sPtr[ subscript ]; // creates lvalue
114
115 } // end function operator[]
116
117 // return reference to character in String as rvalue
118 const char &String::operator[]( int subscript ) const
119 {
120     // test for subscript out of range
121     if ( subscript < 0 || subscript >= length ) {
122         cout << "Error: Subscript " << subscript
123             << " out of range" << endl;
124
125         exit( 1 ); // terminate program
126     }
127
128     return sPtr[ subscript ]; // creates rvalue
129
130 } // end function operator[]

```

[Outline](#) <sup>46</sup>



string1.cpp (5 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

131
132 // return a substring beginning at index and
133 // of length subLength
134 String String::operator()( int index, int subLength )
135 {
136     // if index is out of range or substring length < 0,
137     // return an empty String object
138     if ( index < 0 || index >= length || subLength < 0 )
139         return ""; // converted to a String object automatically
140
141     // determine length of substring
142     int len;
143
144     if ( ( subLength == 0 ) || ( index + subLength > length ) )
145         len = length - index;
146     else
147         len = subLength;
148
149     // allocate temporary array for substring and
150     // terminating null character
151     char *tempPtr = new char[ len + 1 ];
152
153     // copy substring into char array and terminate string
154     strncpy( tempPtr, &sPtr[ index ], len );
155     tempPtr[ len ] = '\0';

```

[Outline](#) <sup>47</sup>

string1.cpp (6 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.16: **String** class member-function and **friend**-function definition. (part 3 of 4)

```

156
157 // create temporary String object containing the substring
158 String tempString( tempPtr );
159 delete [] tempPtr; // delete temporary array
160
161 return tempString; // return copy of the temporary String
162
163 } // end function operator()
164
165 // return string length
166 int String::getLength() const
167 {
168     return length;
169 } // end function getLenth
170
171
172 // utility function called by constructors and operator=
173 void String::setString( const char *string2 )
174 {
175     sPtr = new char[ length + 1 ]; // allocate memory
176     strcpy( sPtr, string2 ); // copy literal to object
177
178 } // end function setString

```


[Outline](#)

48

string1.cpp (7 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

179
180 // overloaded output operator
181 ostream &operator<<( ostream &output, const String &s )
182 {
183     output << s.sPtr;
184
185     return output; // enables cascading
186
187 } // end function operator<<
188
189 // overloaded input operator
190 istream &operator>>( istream &input, String &s )
191 {
192     char temp[ 100 ]; // buffer to store input
193
194     input >> setw( 100 ) >> temp;
195     s = temp; // use String class assignment operator
196
197     return input; // enables cascading
198
199 } // end function operator>>

```


[Outline](#)

49

string1.cpp (8 of 8)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.17: **String** class member-function and **friend**-function definition.  
(part 4 of 4)

```

1 // Fig. 8.9: fig08_09.cpp
2 // String class test program.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "string1.h"
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     String s1( "happy" );
13     String s2( " birthday" );
14     String s3;
15
16     // test overloaded equality and relational operators
17     cout << "s1 is \" << s1 << "\", s2 is \" << s2
18         << "\", s3 is \" << s3 << '\n'
19         << "\n\nThe results of comparing s2 and s1:"
20         << "\ns2 == s1 yields "
21         << ( s2 == s1 ? "true" : "false" )
22         << "\ns2 != s1 yields "
23         << ( s2 != s1 ? "true" : "false" )
24         << "\ns2 > s1 yields "
25         << ( s2 > s1 ? "true" : "false" )

```


[Outline](#)

50

 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (1 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

26         << "\ns2 < s1 yields "
27         << ( s2 < s1 ? "true" : "false" )
28         << "\ns2 >= s1 yields "
29         << ( s2 >= s1 ? "true" : "false" )
30         << "\ns2 <= s1 yields "
31         << ( s2 <= s1 ? "true" : "false" );
32
33     // test overloaded String empty (!) operator
34     cout << "\n\nTesting !s3:\n";
35
36     if ( !s3 ) {
37         cout << "s3 is empty; assigning s1 to s3;\n";
38         s3 = s1; // test overloaded assignment
39         cout << "s3 is \" << s3 << "\";
40     }
41
42     // test overloaded String concatenation operator
43     cout << "\n\ns1 += s2 yields s1 = ";
44     s1 += s2; // test overloaded concatenation
45     cout << s1;
46
47     // test conversion constructor
48     cout << "\n\ns1 += \" to you\" yields\n";
49     s1 += " to you"; // test conversion constructor
50     cout << "s1 = \" << s1 << "\n\n";

```


[Outline](#)

51

 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (2 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.18: **String** class test program. (part 1 of 2)

```

51
52 // test overloaded function call operator () for substring
53 cout << "The substring of s1 starting at\n"
54 << "location 0 for 14 characters, s1(0, 14), is:\n"
55 << s1( 0, 14 ) << "\n\n";
56
57 // test substring "to-end-of-String" option
58 cout << "The substring of s1 starting at\n"
59 << "location 15, s1(15, 0), is: "
60 << s1( 15, 0 ) << "\n\n"; // 0 is "to end of string"
61
62 // test copy constructor
63 String *s4Ptr = new String( s1 );
64 cout << "\n*s4Ptr = " << *s4Ptr << "\n\n";
65
66 // test assignment (=) operator with self-assignment
67 cout << "assigning *s4Ptr to *s4Ptr\n";
68 *s4Ptr = *s4Ptr; // test overloaded assignment
69 cout << "**s4Ptr = " << *s4Ptr << '\n';
70
71 // test destructor
72 delete s4Ptr;
73

```


[Outline](#)

52


 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (3 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

74 // test using subscript operator to create lvalue
75 s1[ 0 ] = 'H';
76 s1[ 6 ] = 'B';
77 cout << "\ns1 after s1[0] = 'H' and s1[6] = 'B' is: "
78 << s1 << "\n\n";
79
80 // test subscript out of range
81 cout << "Attempt to assign 'd' to s1[30] yields:" << endl;
82 s1[ 30 ] = 'd'; // ERROR: subscript out of range
83
84 return 0;
85
86 } // end main

```


[Outline](#)

53


 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (4 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.19: **String** class test program. (part 2 of 2)

```

Conversion constructor: happy
Conversion constructor: birthday
Conversion constructor:
s1 is "happy", s2 is " birthday", s3 is ""

The results of comparing s2 and s1:
s2 == s1 yields false
s2 != s1 yields true
s2 > s1 yields false
s2 < s1 yields true
s2 >= s1 yields false
s2 <= s1 yields true

Testing !s3:
s3 is empty; assigning s1 to s3;
operator= called
s3 is "happy"

s1 += s2 yields s1 = happy birthday

s1 += " to you" yields
Conversion constructor: to you
Destructor: to you
s1 = happy birthday to you

```

The constructor and destructor are called for the temporary `String` (converted from the `char *` "to you").


[Outline](#)

54

 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

Conversion constructor: happy birthday
Copy constructor: happy birthday
Destructor: happy birthday
The substring of s1 starting at
location 0 for 14 characters, s1(0, 14), is:
happy birthday

Destructor: happy birthday
Conversion constructor: to you
Copy constructor: to you
Destructor: to you
The substring of s1 starting at
location 15, s1(15, 0), is: to you

Destructor: to you
Copy constructor: happy birthday to you

*s4Ptr = happy birthday to you

assigning *s4Ptr to *s4Ptr
operator= called
Attempted assignment of a String to itself
*s4Ptr = happy birthday to you
Destructor: happy birthday to you

```

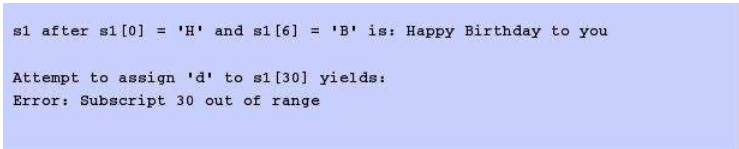

[Outline](#)

55

 fig08\_09.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.20: `String` class test program, output. (part 1 of 2)



```
s1 after s1[0] = 'H' and s1[6] = 'B' is: Happy Birthday to you
Attempt to assign 'd' to s1[30] yields:
Error: Subscript 30 out of range
```

Outline 56

fig08\_09.cpp  
(3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.21: **String** class test program, output. (part 2 of 2)

### 3.11 Overloading ++ and –

- Increment/decrement operators can be overloaded
  - Add 1 to a **Date** object, **d1**
  - Prototype (member function)
    - \* **Date &operator++()**;
    - \* ++**d1** same as **d1.operator++()**
  - Prototype (non-member)
    - \* **Friend Date &operator++( Date &)**;
    - \* ++**d1** same as **operator++( d1 )**
- To distinguish pre/post increment
  - Post increment has a dummy parameter; **int** of **0**
  - Prototype (member function)
    - \* **Date operator++( int )**;

- \* **d1++** same as **d1.operator++( 0 )**
  - Prototype (non-member)
    - \* **friend Date operator++( Data &, int );**
    - \* **d1++** same as **operator++( d1, 0 )**
  - Integer parameter does not have a name; not even in function definition
- Return values
  - Preincrement
    - \* Returns by reference (**Date &**)
    - \* lvalue (can be assigned)
  - Postincrement
    - \* Returns by value
    - \* Returns temporary object with old value
    - \* rvalue (cannot be on left side of assignment)
- Decrement operator analogous

## 3.12 Case Study: A Date Class

- Example Date class. The class uses overloaded preincrement and postincrement operators to add 1 to the day in a **Date** object, while causing appropriate increments to the month and year if necessary.
  - Overloaded increment operator; Change day, month and year
  - Overloaded += operator
  - Function to test for leap years
  - Function to determine if day is last of month



```

1 // Fig. 8.10: date1.h
2 // Date class definition.
3 #ifndef DATE1_H
4 #define DATE1_H
5 #include <iostream>
6
7 using std::ostream;
8
9 class Date {
10     friend ostream &operator<<( ostream &, const Date & );
11
12 public:
13     Date( int m = 1, int d = 1, int y = 1 );
14     void setDate( int, int, int ); // set date
15
16     Date &operator++();           // preincrement operator
17     Date operator++( int );      // postincrement operator
18
19     const Date &operator+=( int ); // add days, modify object
20
21     bool leapYear( int ) const;   // is this a leap year?
22     bool endOfMonth( int ) const; // is this end of month?

```

Note difference between pre and post increment.

61

Outline

date1.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

23
24 private:
25     int month;
26     int day;
27     int year;
28
29     static const int days[]; // array of days per month
30     void helpIncrement();    // utility function
31
32 }; // end class Date
33
34 #endif

```

62

Outline

date1.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.22: **Date** class definition with overloaded increment operator.

```

1 // Fig. 8.11: date1.cpp
2 // Date class member function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4 #include "date1.h"
5
6 // initialize static member at file scope;
7 // one class-wide copy
8 const int Date::days[] =
9     { 0, 31, 28, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31 };
10
11 // Date constructor
12 Date::Date( int m, int d, int y )
13 {
14     setDate( m, d, y );
15 }
16 // end Date constructor
17
18 // set month, day and year
19 void Date::setDate( int mm, int dd, int yy )
20 {
21     month = ( mm >= 1 && mm <= 12 ) ? mm : 1;
22     year = ( yy >= 1900 && yy <= 2100 ) ? yy : 1900;
23 }

```


[Outline](#)

63

date1.cpp (1 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // test for a leap year
25 if ( month == 2 && leapYear( year ) )
26     day = ( dd >= 1 && dd <= 29 ) ? dd : 1;
27 else
28     day = ( dd >= 1 && dd <= days[ month ] ) ? dd : 1;
29
30 // end function setDate
31
32 // overloaded preincrement operator
33 Date &Date::operator++()
34 {
35     helpIncrement();
36
37     return *this; // reference return to create an lvalue
38 }
39 // end function operator++
40
41 // overloaded postincrement operator; no
42 // integer parameter does not have a par
43 Date Date::operator++( int )
44 {
45     Date temp = *this; // hold current s
46     helpIncrement();
47
48     // return unincremented, saved, tempo
49     return temp; // value return; not a
50 }
51 // end function operator++

```


[Outline](#)

64

date1.cpp (2 of 5)

Postincrement updates object and returns a copy of the original. Do not return a reference to temp, because it is a local variable that will be destroyed.

Also note that the integer parameter does not have a name.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.23: **Date** class member- and **friend**-function definition. (part 1 of 3)

```

52
53 // add specified number of days to date
54 const Date &Date::operator+=( int additionalDays )
55 {
56     for ( int i = 0; i < additionalDays; i++ )
57         helpIncrement();
58
59     return *this;    // enables cascading
60
61 } // end function operator+=
62
63 // if the year is a leap year, return true;
64 // otherwise, return false
65 bool Date::leapYear( int testYear ) const
66 {
67     if ( testYear % 400 == 0 ||
68         ( testYear % 100 != 0 && testYear % 4 == 0 ) )
69         return true;    // a leap year
70     else
71         return false; // not a leap year
72
73 } // end function leapYear
74

```


[Outline](#)

65

date1.cpp (3 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

75 // determine whether the day is the last day of the month
76 bool Date::endOfMonth( int testDay ) const
77 {
78     if ( month == 2 && leapYear( year ) )
79         return testDay == 29; // last day of Feb. in leap year
80     else
81         return testDay == days[ month ];
82
83 } // end function endOfMonth
84
85 // function to help increment the date
86 void Date::helpIncrement()
87 {
88     // day is not end of month
89     if ( !endOfMonth( day ) )
90         ++day;
91
92     else
93
94         // day is end of month and month < 12
95         if ( month < 12 ) {
96             ++month;
97             day = 1;
98         }
99

```


[Outline](#)

66

date1.cpp (4 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.24: Date class member- and friend-function definition. (part 2 of 3)

```
100     // last day of year
101     else {
102         ++year;
103         month = 1;
104         day = 1;
105     }
106
107 } // end function helpIncrement
108
109 // overloaded output operator
110 ostream &operator<<( ostream &output, const Date &d )
111 {
112     static char *monthName[ 13 ] = { "", "January",
113         "February", "March", "April", "May", "June",
114         "July", "August", "September", "October",
115         "November", "December" };
116
117     output << monthName[ d.month ] << " "
118         << d.day << " " << d.year;
119
120     return output; // enables cascading
121
122 } // end function operator<<
```

[Outline](#)

67

date1.cpp (5 of 5)

Figure 3.25: **Date** class member- and **friend**-function definition. (part 3 of 3)

```

1 // Fig. 8.12: fig08_12.cpp
2 // Date class test program.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "date1.h" // Date class definition
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     Date d1; // defaults to January 1, 1900
13     Date d2( 12, 27, 1992 );
14     Date d3( 0, 99, 8045 ); // invalid date
15
16     cout << "d1 is " << d1 << "\nd2 is " << d2
17         << "\nd3 is " << d3;
18
19     cout << "\n\nd2 += 7 is " << ( d2 += 7 );
20
21     d3.setDate( 2, 28, 1992 );
22     cout << "\n\nd3 is " << d3;
23     cout << "\n++d3 is " << ++d3;
24
25     Date d4( 7, 13, 2002 );

```


[Outline](#)

68


 fig08\_12.cpp  
 (1 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

26
27     cout << "\n\nTesting the preincrement operator:\n"
28         << " d4 is " << d4 << '\n';
29     cout << "++d4 is " << ++d4 << '\n';
30     cout << " d4 is " << d4;
31
32     cout << "\n\nTesting the postincrement operator:\n"
33         << " d4 is " << d4 << '\n';
34     cout << "d4++ is " << d4++ << '\n';
35     cout << " d4 is " << d4 << endl;
36
37     return 0;
38
39 } // end main

```

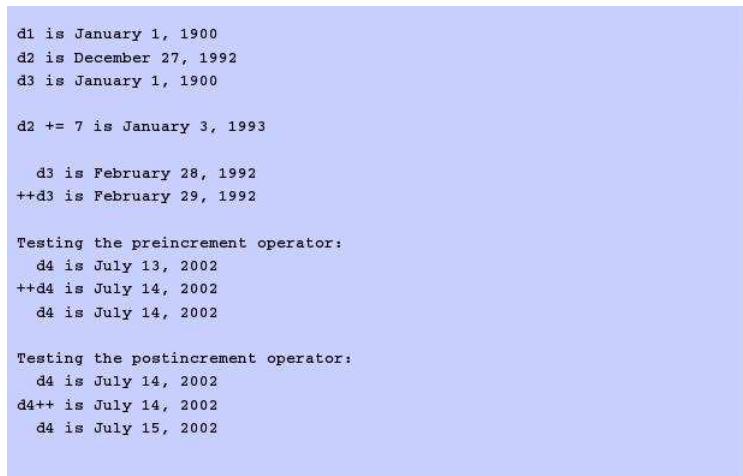

[Outline](#)

69


 fig08\_12.cpp  
 (2 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 3.26: Date class test program.



```

d1 is January 1, 1900
d2 is December 27, 1992
d3 is January 1, 1900

d2 += 7 is January 3, 1993

d3 is February 28, 1992
++d3 is February 29, 1992

Testing the preincrement operator:
d4 is July 13, 2002
++d4 is July 14, 2002
d4 is July 14, 2002

Testing the postincrement operator:
d4 is July 14, 2002
d4++ is July 14, 2002
d4 is July 15, 2002

```

70

[Outline](#)

fig08\_12.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.27: Date class test program, output.

### 3.13 Standard Library Classes `string` and `vector`

We learned that we can build a **String** (**Array**) class that is better than the C-style, `char *` strings (pointer-based arrays) that C++ absorbed from C.

- Classes built into C++
  - Available for anyone to use
  - **string** ; Similar to our **String** class
  - **vector**; Dynamically resizable array
- Redo our **String** and **Array** examples
  - Use **string** and **vector**
- Class `string`
  - Header `<string>`, namespace `std`

- Can initialize **string s1("hi");**
- Overloaded **<<**; **cout << s1**
- Overloaded relational operators; **== != >= > <= <**
- Assignment operator **=**
- Concatenation (overloaded **+=**)
- Substring function **substr**
  - \* **s1.substr(0, 14);** ; Starts at location 0, gets 14 characters
  - \* **S1.substr(15)** ; Substring beginning at location 15
- Overloaded **[]**
  - \* Access one character
  - \* No range checking (if subscript invalid)
- **at** function
  - \* **s1.at(10)**
  - \* Character at subscript 10
  - \* Has bounds checking; will end program if invalid (learn more in Chapter 13)

The programs of Figs. 3.28-3.30 reimplements the program of Figs. 3.18-3.21, using standard class **string**.

```

1 // Fig. 8.13: fig08_13.cpp
2 // Standard library string class test program.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include <string>
9
10 using std::string;
11
12 int main()
13 {
14     string s1( "happy" );
15     string s2( " birthday" );
16     string s3;
17
18     // test overloaded equality and relational operators
19     cout << "s1 is \"" << s1 << "\", s2 is \"" << s2
20          << "\", s3 is \"" << s3 << "\"\n";
21     << "\n\nThe results of comparing s2 and s1:"
22     << "\ns2 == s1 yields "
23     << ( s2 == s1 ? "true" : "false" )
24     << "\ns2 != s1 yields "
25     << ( s2 != s1 ? "true" : "false" )

```


[Outline](#)

74

 fig08\_13.cpp  
 (1 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

26     << "\ns2 > s1 yields "
27     << ( s2 > s1 ? "true" : "false" )
28     << "\ns2 < s1 yields "
29     << ( s2 < s1 ? "true" : "false" )
30     << "\ns2 >= s1 yields "
31     << ( s2 >= s1 ? "true" : "false" )
32     << "\ns2 <= s1 yields "
33     << ( s2 <= s1 ? "true" : "false" );
34
35     // test string member function empty
36     cout << "\n\nTesting s3.empty():\n";
37
38     if ( s3.empty() ) {
39         cout << "s3 is empty; assigning s1 to s3;\n";
40         s3 = s1; // assign s1 to s3
41         cout << "s3 is \"" << s3 << "\"\n";
42     }
43
44     // test overloaded string concatenation operator
45     cout << "\n\ns1 += s2 yields s1 = ";
46     s1 += s2; // test overloaded concatenation
47     cout << s1;
48

```


[Outline](#)

75

 fig08\_13.cpp  
 (2 of 4)



 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.28: Standard library class **string** (part 1 of 2).





### 3.13. STANDARD LIBRARY CLASSES **STRING** AND **VECTOR** 145

```
49 // test overloaded string concatenation operator
50 // with C-style string
51 cout << "\n\ns1 += \" to you\" yields\n";
52 s1 += " to you";
53 cout << "s1 = " << s1 << "\n\n";
54
55 // test string member function substr
56 cout << "The substring of s1 starting at location 0 for\n"
57 << "14 characters, s1.substr(0, 14), is:\n"
58 << s1.substr( 0, 14 ) << "\n\n";
59
60 // test substr "to-end-of-string" option
61 cout << "The substring of s1 starting at\n"
62 << "location 15, s1.substr(15), is:\n"
63 << s1.substr( 15 ) << '\n';
64
65 // test copy constructor
66 string *s4Ptr = new string( s1 );
67 cout << "\n*s4Ptr = " << *s4Ptr << "\n\n";
68
69 // test assignment (=) operator with self-assignment
70 cout << "assigning *s4Ptr to *s4Ptr\n";
71 *s4Ptr = *s4Ptr;
72 cout << "*s4Ptr = " << *s4Ptr << '\n';
73
```

 [Outline](#) 76  
  
fig08\_13.cpp  
(3 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
74 // test destructor
75 delete s4Ptr;
76
77 // test using subscript operator to create lvalue
78 s1[ 0 ] = 'H';
79 s1[ 6 ] = 'B';
80 cout << "\ns1 after s1[0] = 'H' and s1[6] = 'B' is: "
81 << s1 << "\n\n";
82
83 // test subscript out of range with string member function "at"
84 cout << "Attempt to assign 'd' to s1.at( 30 ) yields:" << endl;
85 s1.at( 30 ) = 'd'; // ERROR: subscript out of range
86
87 return 0;
88
89 } // end main
```

 [Outline](#) 77  
  
fig08\_13.cpp  
(4 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.29: Standart library class **string** (part 2 of 2).

```

s1 is "happy"; s2 is " birthday"; s3 is ""

The results of comparing s2 and s1:
s2 == s1 yields false
s2 != s1 yields true
s2 > s1 yields false
s2 < s1 yields true
s2 >= s1 yields false
s2 <= s1 yields true

Testing s3.empty():
s3 is empty; assigning s1 to s3;
s3 is "happy"

s1 += s2 yields s1 = happy birthday

s1 += " to you" yields
s1 = happy birthday to you

The substring of s1 starting at location 0 for
14 characters, s1.substr(0, 14), is:
happy birthday

```


[Outline](#)

78

 fig08\_13.cpp  
 output (1 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

The substring of s1 starting at
location 15, s1.substr(15), is:
to you

*s4Ptr = happy birthday to you

assigning *s4Ptr to *s4Ptr
*s4Ptr = happy birthday to you

s1 after s1[0] = 'H' and s1[6] = 'B' is: Happy Birthday to you

Attempt to assign 'd' to s1.at( 30 ) yields:

abnormal program termination

```


[Outline](#)

79

 fig08\_13.cpp  
 output (2 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.30: Standard library class **string**, output.

### 3.13. STANDARD LIBRARY CLASSES **STRING** AND **VECTOR** 147

- Class **vector**
  - Header `<vector>`, namespace **std**
  - Store any type; `vector< int > myArray(10)`
  - Function `size ( myArray.size() )`
  - Overloaded `[]`; get specific element, `myArray[3]`
  - Overloaded `!=`, `==`, and `=`; inequality, equality, assignment

The programs of Figs. 3.31-3.34 reimplements the program of Figs. 3.8-3.11, using standard class **vector**.

```

1 // Fig. 8.14: fig08_14.cpp
2 // Demonstrating standard library class vector.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::cin;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setw;
12
13 #include <vector>
14
15 using std::vector;
16
17 void outputVector( const vector< int > & );
18 void inputVector( vector< int > & );
19
20 int main()
21 {
22     vector< int > integers1( 7 ); // 7-element vector< int >
23     vector< int > integers2( 10 ); // 10-element vector< int >
24

```


[Outline](#)

81

 fig08\_14.cpp  
 (1 of 5)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

25 // print integers1 size and contents
26 cout << "Size of vector integers1 is "
27     << integers1.size()
28     << "\nvector after initialization:\n";
29 outputVector( integers1 );
30
31 // print integers2 size and contents
32 cout << "\nSize of vector integers2 is "
33     << integers2.size()
34     << "\nvector after initialization:\n";
35 outputVector( integers2 );
36
37 // input and print integers1 and integers2
38 cout << "\nInput 17 integers:\n";
39 inputVector( integers1 );
40 inputVector( integers2 );
41
42 cout << "\nAfter input, the vectors contain:\n"
43     << "integers1:\n";
44 outputVector( integers1 );
45 cout << "integers2:\n";
46 outputVector( integers2 );
47
48 // use overloaded inequality (!=) operator
49 cout << "\nEvaluating: integers1 != integers2\n";
50

```


[Outline](#)

82

 fig08\_14.cpp  
 (2 of 5)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 3.31: Standart library class **vector**. (part 1 of 3)

```

51  if ( integers1 != integers2 )
52      cout << "integers1 and integers2 are not equal\n";
53
54  // create vector integers3 using integers1 as an
55  // initializer; print size and contents
56  vector< int > integers3( integers1 ); // copy constructor
57
58  cout << "\nSize of vector integers3 is "
59      << integers3.size()
60      << "\nvector after initialization:\n";
61  outputVector( integers3 );
62
63
64  // use overloaded assignment (=) operator
65  cout << "\nAssigning integers2 to integers1:\n";
66  integers1 = integers2;
67
68  cout << "integers1:\n";
69  outputVector( integers1 );
70  cout << "integers2:\n";
71  outputVector( integers1 );
72

```

[Outline](#)

83

fig08\_14.cpp  
(3 of 5)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

73  // use overloaded equality (==) operator
74  cout << "\nEvaluating: integers1 == integers2\n";
75
76  if ( integers1 == integers2 )
77      cout << "integers1 and integers2 are equal\n";
78
79  // use overloaded subscript operator to create rvalue
80  cout << "\nintegers1[5] is " << integers1[ 5 ];
81
82  // use overloaded subscript operator to create lvalue
83  cout << "\n\nAssigning 1000 to integers1[5]\n";
84  integers1[ 5 ] = 1000;
85  cout << "integers1:\n";
86  outputVector( integers1 );
87
88  // attempt to use out of range subscript
89  cout << "\n\nAttempt to assign 1000 to integers1.at( 15 )"
90      << endl;
91  integers1.at( 15 ) = 1000; // ERROR: out of range
92
93  return 0;
94
95 } // end main
96


```

[Outline](#)

84

fig08\_14.cpp  
(4 of 5)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.Figure 3.32: Standart library class **vector**. (part 2 of 3)

```
97 // output vector contents
98 void outputVector( const vector< int > &array )
99 {
100     for ( int i = 0; i < array.size(); i++ ) {
101         cout << setw( 12 ) << array[ i ];
102
103         if ( ( i + 1 ) % 4 == 0 ) // 4 numbers per row of output
104             cout << endl;
105
106     } // end for
107
108     if ( i % 4 != 0 )
109         cout << endl;
110
111 } // end function outputVector
112
113 // input vector contents
114 void inputVector( vector< int > &array )
115 {
116     for ( int i = 0; i < array.size(); i++ )
117         cin >> array[ i ];
118
119 } // end function inputVector
```



[Outline](#) 85

fig08\_14.cpp  
(5 of 5)

Figure 3.33: Standart library class `vector`. (part 3 of 3)

### 3.13. STANDARD LIBRARY CLASSES **STRING** AND **VECTOR** 151

```
Size of vector integers1 is 7
vector after initialization:
    0      0      0      0
    0      0      0      0

Size of vector integers2 is 10
vector after initialization:
    0      0      0      0
    0      0      0      0
    0      0

Input 17 integers:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17

After input, the vectors contain:
integers1:
    1      2      3      4
    5      6      7

integers2:
    8      9      10     11
   12     13     14     15
   16     17

Evaluating: integers1 != integers2
integers1 and integers2 are not equal
```



[Outline](#)

86

fig08\_14.cpp  
output (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
Size of vector integers3 is 7
vector after initialization:
    1      2      3      4
    5      6      7

Assigning integers2 to integers1:
integers1:
    8      9      10     11
   12     13     14     15
   16     17

integers2:
    8      9      10     11
   12     13     14     15
   16     17

Evaluating: integers1 == integers2
integers1 and integers2 are equal

integers1[5] is 13

Assigning 1000 to integers1[5]
integers1:
    8      9      10     11
   12     1000   14     15
   16     17

Attempt to assign 1000 to integers1.at( 15 )

abnormal program termination
```



[Outline](#)

87

fig08\_14.cpp  
output (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 3.34: Standard library class **vector**, output.





# Chapter 4

## Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance

### 4.1 Introduction

- Inheritance
  - Software reusability
  - Create new class from existing class
    - \* Absorb existing class's data and behaviors
    - \* Enhance with new capabilities
  - Derived class inherits from base class
    - \* Derived class
      - More specialized group of objects
      - Behaviors inherited from base class; can customize
      - Additional behaviors
- Class hierarchy
  - Direct base class; inherited explicitly (one level up hierarchy)
  - Indirect base class; inherited two or more levels up hierarchy
  - Single inheritance; inherits from one base class
  - Multiple inheritance; Inherits from multiple base classes (Base classes possibly unrelated ); Chapter 22
- Three types of inheritance
  - **public**

- \* Every object of derived class also object of base class
  - Base-class objects not objects of derived classes
  - Example: All cars vehicles, but not all vehicles cars
- \* Can access non-**private** members of base class
  - Derived class can effect change to **private** base-class members
  - Through inherited non-**private** member functions
- **private**
  - \* Alternative to composition
  - \* Chapter 17
- **protected**
  - \* Rarely used
- Abstraction
  - Focus on commonalities among objects in system; "is-a" vs. "has-a"
  - "is-a"
    - \* Inheritance
    - \* Derived class object treated as base class object
    - \* Example: Car *is a* vehicle; Vehicle properties/behaviors also car properties/behaviors
  - "has-a"
    - \* Composition
    - \* Object contains one or more objects of other classes as members
    - \* Example: Car *has a* steering wheel

## 4.2 Base Classes and Derived Classes

- Base classes and derived classes
  - Object of one class "is an" object of another class
    - \* Example: Rectangle is quadrilateral.
      - Class **Rectangle** inherits from class **Quadrilateral**
      - **Quadrilateral**: base class

- **Rectangle**: derived class
- Base class typically represents larger set of objects than derived classes
  - \* Example:
    - Base class: **Vehicle**  
Cars, trucks, boats, bicycles, ...
    - Derived class: **Car**  
Smaller, more-specific subset of vehicles
- Inheritance examples (see Fig. 4.1)

7

## 9.2 Base Classes and Derived Classes

- Inheritance examples

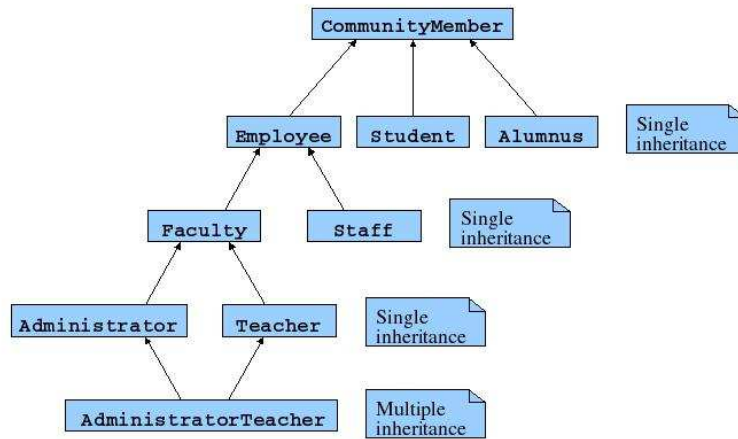
Base class	Derived classes
Student	GraduateStudent UndergraduateStudent
Shape	Circle Triangle Rectangle
Loan	CarLoan HomeImprovementLoan MortgageLoan
Employee	FacultyMember StaffMember
Account	CheckingAccount SavingsAccount



Figure 4.1: Inheritance examples

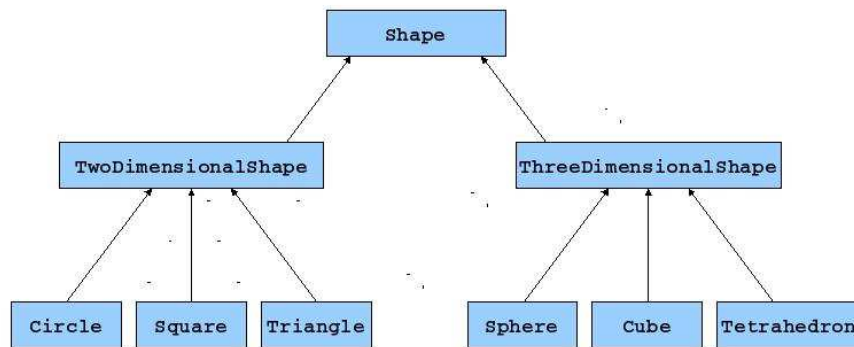
- Inheritance hierarchy (see Fig. 4.2 Top)
  - Inheritance relationships: tree-like hierarchy structure
  - Each class becomes
    - \* Base class; supply data/behaviors to other classes
    - \* OR

Fig. 9.2 Inheritance hierarchy for university `CommunityMembers`.



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved. ■ ■

Fig. 9.3 Inheritance hierarchy for Shapes.



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved. ■ ■

Figure 4.2: Inheritance hierarchy for university `CommunityMembers` and Inheritance hierarchy for `Shapes`

- \* Derived class; inherit data/behaviors from other classes
- public inheritance
  - Specify with:
    - **Class TwoDimensionalShape : public Shape**  
Class **TwoDimensionalShape** inherits from class **Shape** (see Fig. 4.2 Bottom)
    - Base class **private** members
      - \* Not accessible directly
      - \* Still inherited; manipulate through inherited member functions
    - Base class **public** and **protected** members; inherited with original member access
    - **friend** functions; not inherited

## 4.3 protected Members

Protected access

- Intermediate level of protection between **public** and **private**
- **protected** members accessible to
  - Base class members
  - Base class **friends**
  - Derived class members
  - Derived class **friends**
- Derived-class members
  - Refer to **public** and **protected** members of base class; simply use member names

## 4.4 Relationship between *Base Classes* and *Derived Classes*

- Base class and derived class relationship

```

1 // Fig. 9.4: point.h
2 // Point class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT_H
4 #define POINT_H
5
6 class Point {
7
8 public:
9     Point( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10
11     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
12     int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
13
14     void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
15     int getY() const; // return y from coordinate pair
16
17     void print() const; // output Point object
18
19 private:
20     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
21     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
22
23 }; // end class Point
24
25 #endif

```

Outline <sup>14</sup>  
point.h (1 of 1)

Maintain **x**- and **y**-coordinates as **private** data members.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.3: **Point** class header file

- Example: Point/circle inheritance hierarchy


- Point  
x-y coordinate pair
- Circle  
x-y coordinate pair  
Radius

- Using protected data members

- Advantages


#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 159

```
1 // Fig. 9.5: point.cpp
2 // Point class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Point::Point( int xValue, int yValue )
11 {
12     x = xValue;
13     y = yValue;
14
15 } // end Point constructor
16
17 // set x in coordinate pair
18 void Point::setX( int xValue )
19 {
20     x = xValue; // no need for validation
21
22 } // end function setX
23
```

 [Outline](#) 15  
point.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.


```
24 // return x from coordinate pair
25 int Point::getX() const
26 {
27     return x;
28
29 } // end function getX
30
31 // set y in coordinate pair
32 void Point::setY( int yValue )
33 {
34     y = yValue; // no need for validation
35
36 } // end function setY
37
38 // return y from coordinate pair
39 int Point::getY() const
40 {
41     return y;
42
43 } // end function getY
44
```

 [Outline](#) 16  
point.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.4: **Point** class represents an xy-coordinate pair. (part 1 of 2)

```
45 // output Point object
46 void Point::print() const
47 {
48     cout << '[' << x << ", " << y << ']'<< endl;
49 }
50 }
```



[Outline](#) 17

point.cpp (3 of 3)

Figure 4.5: **Point** class represents an xy-coordinate pair. (part 2 of 2)



#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 161

```
1 // Fig. 9.6: pointtest.cpp
2 // Testing class Point.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
9
10 int main()
11 {
12     Point point( 72, 115 ); // instantiate Point object
13
14     // display point coordinates
15     cout << "X coordinate is " << point.getX() << "
16         << "\nY coordinate is " << point.getY() << endl;
17
18     point.setX( 10 ); // set X-coordinate
19     point.setY( 10 ); // set Y-coordinate
20
21     // display new point value
22     cout << "\n\nThe new location of point is [10, 10]
23     point.print();
24     cout << endl;
25 }
```

Create a **Point** object.

Invoke set functions to modify **private** data.

Invoke **public** function **print** to display new coordinates.

18

Outline

pointtest.cpp (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
26     return 0; // indicates successful termination
27
28 } // end main
```

X coordinate is 72  
Y coordinate is 115

The new location of point is [10, 10]

19

Outline

pointtest.cpp (2 of 2)

pointtest.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.6: **Point** class test program.

## 4.4.1 Creating a Circle class without using inheritance

```

1 // Fig. 9.7: circle.h
2 // Circle class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE_H
4 #define CIRCLE_H
5
6 class Circle {
7
8 public:
9
10 // default constructor
11 Circle( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0
12
13 void setX( int ); // set x
14 int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
15
16 void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
17 int getY() const; // return y from coordinate pair
18
19 void setRadius( double ); // set radius
20 double getRadius() const; // return radius
21
22 double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
23 double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
24 double getArea() const; // return area
25
26 void print() const; // output Circle object
27
28 private:
29 int x; // x-coordinate
30 int y; // y-coordinate of Circle's center
31 double radius; // Circle's radius
32
33 }; // end class Circle
34
35 #endif

```



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.7: Circle class header file.



#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 163

```
1 // Fig. 9.8: circle.cpp
2 // Circle class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle::Circle( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue )
11 {
12     x = xValue;
13     y = yValue;
14     setRadius( radiusValue );
15 }
16 // end Circle constructor
17
18 // set x in coordinate pair
19 void Circle::setX( int xValue )
20 {
21     x = xValue; // no need for validation
22 }
23 // end function setX
24
```

 [Outline](#) 22  
 circle.cpp (1 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
25 // return x from coordinate pair
26 int Circle::getX() const
27 {
28     return x;
29 }
30 // end function getX
31
32 // set y in coordinate pair
33 void Circle::setY( int yValue )
34 {
35     y = yValue; // no need for validation
36 }
37 // end function setY
38
39 // return y from coordinate pair
40 int Circle::getY() const
41 {
42     return y;
43 }
44 // end function getY
45
```

 [Outline](#) 23  
 circle.cpp (2 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.8: **Circle** class contains an xy-coordinate pair and a radius. (part 1 of 2)

```

46 // set radius
47 void Circle::setRadius( double radiusValue )
48 {
49     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
50
51 } // end function setRadius
52
53 // return radius
54 double Circle::getRadius() const
55 {
56     return radius;
57
58 } // end function getRadius
59
60 // calculate and return diameter
61 double Circle::getDiameter() const
62 {
63     return 2 * radius;
64
65 } // end function getDiameter
66

```

Ensure non-negative value for radius.

24

Outline

circle.cpp (3 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

67 // calculate and return circumference
68 double Circle::getCircumference() const
69 {
70     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
71
72 } // end function getCircumference
73
74 // calculate and return area
75 double Circle::getArea() const
76 {
77     return 3.14159 * radius * radius;
78
79 } // end function getArea
80
81 // output Circle object
82 void Circle::print() const
83 {
84     cout << "Center = [" << x << ", " << y << "]" << '\n';
85     << " "; Radius = " << radius;
86
87 } // end function print

```

25

Outline

circle.cpp (4 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.9: **Circle** class contains an xy-coordinate pair and a radius. (part 2 of 2)

#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 165

```

1 // Fig. 9.9: circletest.cpp
2 // Testing class Circle.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
14
15 int main()
16 {
17     Circle circle( 37, 43, 2.5 ); // instantiate Circle object
18
19     // display point coordinates
20     cout << "X coordinate is " << circle.getX()
21         << "\nY coordinate is " << circle.getY()
22         << "\nRadius is " << circle.getRadius();
23

```

26 **Outline**  
circletest.cpp (1 of 2)

Create Circle object.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24     circle.setX( 2 ); // set new x-coordinate
25     circle.setY( 2 ); // set new y-coordinate
26     circle.setRadius( 4.25 ); // set new radius
27
28     // display new point value
29     cout << "\n\nThe new location and
30     circle.print();
31
32     // display floating-point values with
33     cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 )
34
35     // display Circle's diameter
36     cout << "\nDiameter is " << circle.getDiameter();
37
38     // display Circle's circumference
39     cout << "\nCircumference is " << circle.getCircumference();
40
41     // display Circle's area
42     cout << "\nArea is " << circle.getArea();
43
44     cout << endl;
45
46     return 0; // indicates successful termination
47
48 } // end main

```

27 **Outline**  
circletest.cpp (2 of 2)

Use set functions to modify private data.

Invoke public function print to display new coordinates.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.10: Circle class test program. (part 1 of 2)

## 4.4.2 Point/Circle Hierarchy using Inheritance

```
X coordinate is 37
Y coordinate is 43
Radius is 2.5
```

```
The new location and radius of circle are
Center = [2, 2]; Radius = 4.25
Diameter is 8.50
Circumference is 26.70
Area is 56.74
```


[Outline](#)

28

 circletest.cpp  
 output (1 of 1)

```
1 // Fig. 9.10: circle2.h
2 // Circle2 class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE2_H
4 #define CIRCLE2_H
5
6 #include "point.h" // Point class
7
8 class Circle2 : public Point {
9
10 public:
11
12 // default constructor
13 Circle2( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15 void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16 double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18 double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19 double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20 double getArea() const; // return area
21
22 void print() const; //
23
24 private:
25 double radius; // Circle2's radius
```

Class `Circle2` inherits from class `Point`.

Keyword `public` indicates type of inheritance.

Maintain `private` data member `radius`.

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

[Outline](#)

29

circle2.h (1 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 4.11: **Circle** class test program. (part 2 of 2) and **Circle2** class header file. (part 1 of 2)

#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 167

```
26
27 }; // end class Circle2
28
29 #endif

1 // Fig. 9.11: circle2.cpp
2 // Circle2 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle2.h" // Circle2 class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle2::Circle2( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue )
11 {
12     x = xValue;
13     y = yValue;
14     setRadius( radiusValue );
15 } // end Circle2 constructor
16
17
```

Attempting to access base class Point's private data members **x** and **y** results in syntax errors.

30

Outline

circle2.h (2 of 2)

circle2.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
18 // set radius
19 void Circle2::setRadius( double radiusValue )
20 {
21     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
22 } // end function setRadius
23
24 // return radius
25 double Circle2::getRadius() const
26 {
27     return radius;
28 } // end function getRadius
29
30 // calculate and return diameter
31 double Circle2::getDiameter() const
32 {
33     return 2 * radius;
34 } // end function getDiameter
35
36
37
38
```

31

Outline

circle2.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.12: **Circle2** class header file (part 2 of 2) and Private base-class data can not be accessed from derived class. (part 1 of 2)

```

39 // calculate and return circumference
40 double Circle2::getCircumference() const
41 {
42     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
43 }
44 // end function getCircumference
45
46 // calculate and return area
47 double Circle2::getArea() const
48 {
49     return 3.14159 * radius * radius;
50 }
51 // end function getArea
52
53 // output Circle2 object
54 void Circle2::print() const
55 {
56     cout << "Center = [" << x << ", " << y << "]"
57         << "; Radius = " << radius;
58 }
59 // end function print

```

Attempting to access base class **Point**'s **private** data members **x** and **y** results in syntax errors.

32

Outline

circle2.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\CircleTest\circle2.cpp(12) : error C2248: 'x' :
cannot access private member declared in class 'Point'
C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\circletest\point.h(20) :
see declaration of 'x'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\CircleTest\circle2.cpp(13) : error C2248: 'y' :
cannot access private member declared in class 'Point'
C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\circletest\point.h(21) :
see declaration of 'y'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\CircleTest\circle2.cpp(56) : error C2248: 'x' :
cannot access private member declared in class 'Point'
C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\circletest\point.h(20) :
see declaration of 'x'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\CircleTest\circle2.cpp(56) : error C2248: 'y' :
cannot access private member declared in class 'Point'
C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch09\circletest\point.h(21) :
see declaration of 'y'

```

Attempting to access base class **Point**'s **private** data members **x** and **y** results in syntax errors.

33

Outline

circle2.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

Figure 4.13: Private base-class data can not be accessed from derived class.  
(part 2 of 2)





## 4.4.3 Point/Circle Hierarchy using protected data

```

1 // Fig. 9.12: point2.h
2 // Point2 class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT2_H
4 #define POINT2_H
5
6 class Point2 {
7
8 public:
9     Point2( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10
11     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
12     int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
13
14     void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
15     int getY() const; //
16
17     void print() const; //
18
19 protected:
20     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
21     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
22
23 }; // end class Point2
24
25 #endif

```

 [Outline](#) 34  
 point2.h (1 of 1)

Maintain x- and y-coordinates as protected data, accessible to derived classes.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 9.13: point2.cpp
2 // Point2 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "point2.h" // Point2 class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Point2::Point2( int xValue, int yValue )
11 {
12     x = xValue;
13     y = yValue;
14
15 } // end Point2 constructor
16
17 // set x in coordinate pair
18 void Point2::setX( int xValue )
19 {
20     x = xValue; // no need for validation
21
22 } // end function setX
23

```

 [Outline](#) 35  
 point2.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.14: **Point2** class header file.

```

24 // return x from coordinate pair
25 int Point2::getX() const
26 {
27     return x;
28 }
29 // end function getX
30
31 // set y in coordinate pair
32 void Point2::setY( int yValue )
33 {
34     y = yValue; // no need for validation
35 }
36 // end function setY
37
38 // return y from coordinate pair
39 int Point2::getY() const
40 {
41     return y;
42 }
43 // end function getY
44

```


[Outline](#)

36

point2.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

45 // output Point2 object
46 void Point2::print() const
47 {
48     cout << '[' << x << ", " << y << ']'<< endl;
49 }
50 // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

37

point2.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.15: **Point2** class represents an xy-coordinate pair as **protected** data.

#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 171

```
1 // Fig. 9.14: circle3.h
2 // Circle3 class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE3_H
4 #define CIRCLE3_H
5
6 #include "point2.h" // Point2 class definition
7
8 class Circle3 : public Point2 {
9
10 public:
11
12     // default constructor
13     Circle3( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15     void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16     double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18     double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19     double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20     double getArea() const; // return area
21
22     void print() const; //
23
24 private:
25     double radius; // Circle3's radius
26
27 }; // end class Circle3
28
29 #endif
```

Class Circle3 inherits from class Point2.

Maintain private data member radius.

38

Outline

circle3.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

39

Outline

circle3.h (2 of 2)

Figure 4.16: Circle3 class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 9.15: circle3.cpp
2 // Circle3 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle3.h" // Circle3 class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle3::Circle3( int xValue,
11 {
12     x = xValue;
13     y = yValue;
14     setRadius( radiusValue );
15 } // end Circle3 constructor
16
17 // set radius
18 void Circle3::setRadius( double radiusValue )
19 {
20     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
21 } // end function setRadius
22
23
24

```

Constructor first implicitly calls base class's default constructor.

protected in base class Point2.

40

Outline

circle3.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25 // return radius
26 double Circle3::getRadius() const
27 {
28     return radius;
29 } // end function getRadius
30
31 // calculate and return diameter
32 double Circle3::getDiameter() const
33 {
34     return 2 * radius;
35 } // end function getDiameter
36
37 // calculate and return circumference
38 double Circle3::getCircumference() const
39 {
40     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
41 } // end function getCircumference
42
43
44
45

```

41

Outline

circle3.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.17: **Circle3** class that inherits from class **Point2**.

#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 173

```
46 // calculate and return area
47 double Circle3::getArea() const
48 {
49     return 3.14159 * radius * radius;
50 }
51 } // end function getArea
52
53 // output Circle3 object
54 void Circle3::print() const
55 {
56     cout << "Center = [" << x << ", " << y << "],
57         << "; Radius = " << radius;
58 }
59 } // end function print
```

42

Outline

circle3.cpp (3 of 3)

Access inherited data members **x** and **y**, declared **protected** in base class **Point2**.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 9.16: circletest3.cpp
2 // Testing class Circle3.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include "circle3.h" // Circle3 class def
14
15 int main()
16 {
17     Circle3 circle( 37, 43, 2.5 ); // instantiate Circle3 object
18
19     // display point coordinates
20     cout << "X coordinate is " << circle.getX()
21         << "\nY coordinate is " << circle.getY()
22         << "\nRadius is " << circle.getRadius();
23 }
```

43

Outline

circletest3.cpp  
(1 of 2)

Create **Circle3** object.

Use inherited get functions to access inherited **protected**

Use **Circle3** get function to access **private** data **radius**.

Figure 4.18: Protected base-class data can be accessed from derived class.  
(part 1 of 2)

```

24 circle.setX( 2 ); // set new x-coordinate
25 circle.setY( 2 ); // set new y-coordinate
26 circle.setRadius( 4.25 ); // set new radius
27
28 // display new point value
29 cout << "\n\nThe new location and radius are:
30 circle.print();
31
32 // display floating-point values with 2 digits of precision
33 cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
34
35 // display Circle3's diameter
36 cout << "\nDiameter is " << circle.getDiameter();
37
38 // display Circle3's circumference
39 cout << "\nCircumference is " << circle.getCircumference();
40
41 // display Circle3's area
42 cout << "\nArea is " << circle.getArea();
43
44 cout << endl;
45
46 return 0; // indicates successful termination
47
48 } // end main

```

Use inherited set functions to modify inherited data.  
Use Circle3 set function to modify private data radius.

circletest3.cpp (2 of 2)

Outline 44

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

X coordinate is 37
Y coordinate is 43
Radius is 2.5

The new location and radius of circle are
Center = [2, 2]; Radius = 4.25
Diameter is 8.50
Circumference is 26.70
Area is 56.74

```

circletest3.cpp output (1 of 1)

Outline 45

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.19: Protected base-class data can be accessed from derived class. (part 2 of 2)

#### 4.4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BASE CLASSES AND DERIVED CLASSES 175

- \* Derived classes can modify values directly
- \* Slight increase in performance; avoid set/get function call overhead
- Disadvantages
  - \* No validity checking; derived class can assign illegal value
  - \* Implementation dependent
    - Derived class member functions more likely dependent on base class implementation
    - Base class implementation changes may result in derived class modifications; fragile (brittle) software

#### 4.4.4 Point/Circle Hierarchy using private data

Class **Point3** (Figs. 4.20-4.21) declares data members **x** and **y** as **private** and exposes member functions **setX**, **getX**, **setY**, **getY** and **print** for manipulating these values.

### 4.5 Case Study: Three-Level Inheritance Hierarchy

Three level point/circle/cylinder hierarchy

- Point
  - x-y coordinate pair
- Circle
  - x-y coordinate pair
  - Radius
- Cylinder
  - x-y coordinate pair
  - Radius
  - Height

Derive class **Cylinder** from class **Circle4**. Class **Cylinder** should redefine member functions **getArea** and **print** member functions. Figs. 4.26-4.27 present class **Cylinder**, which inherits from class **Circle4**. We were able to develop classes **Circle4** and **Cylinder** much more quickly by using inheritance than if we had developed these classes "from scratch". Inheritance avoids duplicating code and the associated code-maintenance problems.



4.5. CASE STUDY: THREE-LEVEL INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 177

```
1 // Fig. 9.17: point3.h
2 // Point3 class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT3_H
4 #define POINT3_H
5
6 class Point3 {
7
8 public:
9     Point3( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10
11     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
12     int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
13
14     void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
15     int getY() const; //
16
17     void print() const; //
18
19 private:
20     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
21     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
22
23 }; // end class Point3
24
25 #endif
```

47

Outline

point3.h (1 of 1)

Better software-engineering practice: **private** over **protected** when possible.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 9.18: point3.cpp
2 // Point3 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "point3.h" // Point3 class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Point3::Point3( int xValue, int yValue )
11     : x( xValue ), y( yValue )
12 {
13     // empty body
14 } // end Point3 constructor
15
16 // set x in coordinate pair
17 void Point3::setX( int xValue )
18 {
19     x = xValue; // no need for validation
20 } // end function setX
21
22
23
```

48

Outline

point3.cpp (1 of 3)

Member initializers specify values of **x** and **y**.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.20: **Point3** class header file. Point/Circle Hierarchy Using **private** Data

```

24 // return x from coordinate pair
25 int Point3::getX() const
26 {
27     return x;
28 } // end function getX
29
30
31 // set y in coordinate pair
32 void Point3::setY( int yValue )
33 {
34     y = yValue; // no need for validation
35 } // end function setY
36
37
38 // return y from coordinate pair
39 int Point3::getY() const
40 {
41     return y;
42 } // end function getY
43
44

```


[Outline](#)

49

point3.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

45 // output Point3 object
46 void Point3::print() const
47 {
48     cout << '[' << getX() << ", " << getY() << ']' ;
49 } // end function print
50

```


[Outline](#)

50

point3.cpp (3 of 3)

Invoke non-private  
member functions to access  
private data.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.21: **Point3** class uses member functions to manipulate its **private** data.

4.5. CASE STUDY: THREE-LEVEL INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 179

```
1 // Fig. 9.19: circle4.h
2 // Circle4 class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE4_H
4 #define CIRCLE4_H
5
6 #include "point3.h" // Point3
7
8 class Circle4 : public Point3 {
9
10 public:
11
12 // default constructor
13 Circle4( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15 void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16 double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18 double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19 double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20 double getArea() const; // return area
21
22 void print() const; //
23
24 private:
25 double radius; // Circle4's radius
26
27 }; // end class Circle4
28
29 #endif
```

Class Circle4 inherits from class Point3.

Maintain private data member radius.

51

Outline

circle4.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

52

Outline

circle4.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.22: Circle4 class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 9.20: circle4.cpp
2 // Circle4 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle4.h" // Circle4 class
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle4::Circle4( int xValue, int yValue
11 : Point3( xValue, yValue ) // call base-class constructor
12 {
13     setRadius( radiusValue );
14 }
15 // end Circle4 constructor
16
17 // set radius
18 void Circle4::setRadius( double radiusValue )
19 {
20     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
21 }
22 // end function setRadius
23

```

Base-class initializer syntax passes arguments to base class **Point3**.

53

Outline

circle4.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // return radius
25 double Circle4::getRadius() const
26 {
27     return radius;
28 }
29 // end function getRadius
30
31 // calculate and return diameter
32 double Circle4::getDiameter() const
33 {
34     return 2 * getRadius();
35 }
36 // end function getDiameter
37
38 // calculate and return circumference
39 double Circle4::getCircumference() const
40 {
41     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
42 }
43 // end function getCircumference
44

```

Invoke function **getRadius** rather than directly accessing data member **radius**.

54

Outline

circle4.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.23: **Circle4** class that inherits from class **Point3**, which does not provide **protected** data. (part 1 of 2)

4.5. CASE STUDY: THREE-LEVEL INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 181

```

45 // calculate and return area
46 double Circle4::getArea() const
47 {
48     return 3.14159 * getRadius() * getRadius();
49 } // end function getArea
50 } // end function print
51
52 // output Circle4 object
53 void Circle4::print() const
54 {
55     cout << "Center = "
56     Point3::print(); // invoke P
57     cout << "; Radius = " << getRadius();
58 } // end function print

```

Outline 55  
circle4.cpp (3 of 3)

Redefine class Point3's member function print.  
Invoke function getRadius  
Invoke base-class Point3's print function using binary scope-resolution operator (::).

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 9.21: circletest4.cpp
2 // Testing class Circle4.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include "circle4.h" // Circle4 class def
14
15 int main()
16 {
17     Circle4 circle( 37, 43, 2.5 ); // instantiate Circle4 object
18
19     // display point coordinates
20     cout << "X coordinate is " << circle.getX()
21         << "\nY coordinate is " << circle.getY()
22         << "\nRadius is " << circle.getRadius();
23 }

```

Outline 56  
circletest4.cpp (1 of 2)

Create Circle4 object.  
Use inherited get functions to access inherited protected  
Use Circle3 get function to access private data radius.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.24: Circle4 class that inherits from class Point3, which does not provide protected data. (part 2 of 2)

```

24 circle.setX( 2 ); // set new x-coordinate
25 circle.setY( 2 ); // set new y-coordinate
26 circle.setRadius( 4.25 ); // set new radius
27
28 // display new circle value
29 cout << "\n\nThe new location and radius are:
30 circle.print();
31
32 // display floating-point values with 2 digits of precision
33 cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
34
35 // display Circle4's diameter
36 cout << "\nDiameter is " << circle.getDiameter();
37
38 // display Circle4's circumference
39 cout << "\nCircumference is " << circle.getCircumference();
40
41 // display Circle4's area
42 cout << "\nArea is " << circle.getArea();
43
44 cout << endl;
45
46 return 0; // indicates successful termination
47
48 } // end main

```

Use inherited set functions to modify inherited data.  
Use Circle3 set function to modify private data radius.

circletest4.cpp (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

X coordinate is 37
Y coordinate is 43
Radius is 2.5

The new location and radius of circle are
Center = [2, 2]; Radius = 4.25
Diameter is 8.50
Circumference is 26.70
Area is 56.74

```

circletest4.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.25: Base class **private** data is accessible to a derived class via **public** or **protected** member function inherited by the derived class.

4.5. CASE STUDY: THREE-LEVEL INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 183

```
1 // Fig. 9.22: cylinder.h
2 // Cylinder class inherits from class Circle4.
3 #ifndef CYLINDER_H
4 #define CYLINDER_H
5
6 #include "circle4.h" // Circle4 class definition
7
8 class Cylinder : public Circle4 {
9
10 public:
11
12 // default constructor
13 Cylinder( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0, double = 0.0 );
14
15 void setHeight( double ); // set Cylinder's height
16 double getHeight() const; // return Cylinder's height
17
18 double getArea() const; // return Cylinder's area
19 double getVolume() const; // r
20 void print() const; // o
21
22 private:
23 double height; // Cylinder's height
24
25 }; // end class Cylinder
```

Class **Cylinder** inherits from class **Circle4**.

Maintain **private** data member **height**.

60

Outline

cylinder.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
26
27 #endif

1 // Fig. 9.23: cylinder.cpp
2 // Cylinder class inherits from class Circle4.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "cylinder.h" // Cylinder class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Cylinder::Cylinder( int xValue, int yValue,
11 double heightValue )
12 : Circle4( xValue, yValue, radiusValue )
13 {
14     setHeight( heightValue );
15 }
16 // end Cylinder constructor
17
```

Base-class initializer syntax passes arguments to base class **Circle4**.

61

Outline

cylinder.h (2 of 2)

cylinder.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.26: **Cylinder** class header file.

```

18 // set Cylinder's height
19 void Cylinder::setHeight( double heightValue )
20 {
21     height = ( heightValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : heightValue );
22
23 } // end function setHeight
24
25 // get Cylinder's height
26 double Cylinder::getHeight() const
27 {
28     return height;
29
30 } // end function getHeight
31
32 // redefine Circle4 function getArea to
33 double Cylinder::getArea() const
34 {
35     return 2 * Circle4::getArea() +
36         getCircumference() * getHeight();
37
38 } // end function getArea
39

```

Outline 62  
cylinder.cpp  
(2 of 3)

Redefine base class  
Invoke base-class  
Circle4's getArea  
function using binary scope-  
resolution operator (::).

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

40 // calculate Cylinder volume
41 double Cylinder::getVolume() const
42 {
43     return Circle4::getArea() * getHeight();
44
45 } // end function getVolume
46
47 // output Cylinder object
48 void Cylinder::print() const
49 {
50     Circle4::print();
51     cout << " Height = " << getHeight();
52
53 } // end function print

```

Outline 63  
cylinder.cpp  
(3 of 3)

Invoke base-class  
Circle4's getArea  
function using binary scope-  
resolution operator (::).

Redefine class Circle4's  
print function.

Invoke base-class  
Circle4's print  
function using binary scope-  
resolution  
operator (::).

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.27: **Cylinder** class inherits from class **Circle4** and redefines member function **getArea**.



4.5. CASE STUDY: THREE-LEVEL INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 185

```

1 // Fig. 9.24: cylindertest.cpp
2 // Testing class Cylinder.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include "cylinder.h" // Cylinder class definition
14
15 int main()
16 {
17     // instantiate Cylinder object
18     Cylinder cylinder( 12, 23, 2.5, 5.7 );
19
20     // display point coordinates
21     cout << "X coordinate is " << cylinder.getX()
22          << "\nY coordinate is " << cylinder.getY()
23          << "\nRadius is " << cylinder.getRadius()
24          << "\nHeight is " << cylinder.getHeight();
25

```

64

Outline

cylindertest.cpp  
(1 of 3)

Invoke indirectly inherited **Point3** member functions.  
Invoke directly inherited **Cylinder** member function.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26     cylinder.setX( 2 ); // set new x-coordinate
27     cylinder.setY( 2 ); // set new y-coordinate
28     cylinder.setRadius( 4.25 ); // set new radius
29     cylinder.setHeight( 10 ); // set new height
30
31     // display new cylinder value
32     cout << "\n\nThe new location and radius are: " << cylinder.getX() << " "
33          << cylinder.getY() << " " << cylinder.getRadius() << " "
34          << cylinder.getHeight() << endl;
35
36     // display floating-point values
37     cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
38
39     // display cylinder's diameter
40     cout << "\n\nDiameter is " << cylinder.getDiameter();
41
42     // display cylinder's circumference
43     cout << "\n\nCircumference is "
44          << cylinder.getCircumference();
45
46     // display cylinder's area
47     cout << "\n\nArea is " << cylinder.getArea();
48
49     // display cylinder's volume
50     cout << "\n\nVolume is " << cylinder.getVolume();

```

65

Outline

cylindertest.cpp  
(2 of 3)

Invoke indirectly inherited **Point3** member functions.  
Invoke directly inherited **Cylinder** member function.

Invoke redefined **print** function.

Invoke redefined **getArea** function.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.28: Point/Circle/Cylinder hierarchy test program. (part 1 of 2)

```

51     cout << endl;
52
53     return 0; // indicates successful termination
54
55 } // end main

```

```

X coordinate is 12
Y coordinate is 23
Radius is 2.5
Height is 5.7

The new location and radius of circle are
Center = [2, 2]; Radius = 4.25; Height = 10

Diameter is 8.50
Circumference is 26.70
Area is 380.53
Volume is 567.45

```

Outline 66

cylindertest.cpp (3 of 3)

cylindertest.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.29: **Point/Circle/Cylinder** hierarchy test program. (part 2 of 2)

## 4.6 Constructors and Destructors in Derived Classes

- Instantiating derived-class object
  - Chain of constructor calls
    - \* Derived-class constructor invokes base class constructor
      - Implicitly or explicitly
    - \* Base of inheritance hierarchy
      - Last constructor called in chain
      - First constructor body to finish executing
      - Example: **Point3/Circle4/Cylinder** hierarchy  
**Point3** constructor called last  
**Point3** constructor body finishes execution first
    - \* Initializing data members
      - Each base-class constructor initializes data members  
 Inherited by derived class

#### 4.6. CONSTRUCTORS AND DESTRUCTORS IN DERIVED CLASSES 187

- Destroying derived-class object
  - Chain of destructor calls
    - \* Reverse order of constructor chain
    - \* Destructor of derived-class called first
    - \* Destructor of next base class up hierarchy next
      - Continue up hierarchy until final base reached; After final base-class destructor, object removed from memory
  
- Base-class constructors, destructors, assignment operators
  - Not inherited by derived classes
  
  - Derived class constructors, assignment operators can call
    - \* Constructors
  
    - \* Assignment operators

Next example revisits the point/circle hierarchy by defining class **Point4** (4.30-4.31) and class **Circle5** (4.32-4.34) that contain constructors and destructors, each of which prints a message when it is invoked.

## 4.7 "Uses A" and "Knows A" Relationships

- "Uses a"
  - Object uses another object
    - \* Call non-**private** member function; using pointer, reference or object name
- "Knows a" (association)
  - Object aware of another object; contain pointer handle or reference handle
  - Knowledge networks

## 4.8 public, protected and private Inheritance

## 4.9 Software Engineering with Inheritance

Customizing existing software

- Inherit from existing classes
  - Include additional members
  - Redefine base-class members
  - No direct access to base class's source code; Link to object code
- Independent software vendors (ISVs)
  - Develop proprietary code for sale/license; available in object-code format
  - Users derive new classes; without accessing ISV proprietary source code

```

1 // Fig. 9.25: point4.h
2 // Point4 class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT4_H
4 #define POINT4_H
5
6 class Point4 {
7
8 public:
9     Point4( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10    ~Point4(); // destructor
11
12    void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
13    int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
14
15    void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
16    int getY() const; // return y from coordinate pair
17
18    void print() const; // output Point3 object
19
20 private:
21    int x; // x part of coordinate pair
22    int y; // y part of coordinate pair
23
24 }; // end class Point4
25
26 #endif

```

Constructor and destructor output messages to demonstrate function call order.

point4.h (1 of 1)

Outline 70

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 9.26: point4.cpp
2 // Point4 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "point4.h" // Point4 class definition
9
10 // default constructor
11 Point4::Point4( int xValue, int yValue )
12     : x( xValue ), y( yValue )
13 {
14     cout << "Point4 constructor: ";
15     print();
16     cout << endl;
17 } // end Point4 constructor
18
19 // destructor
20 Point4::~~Point4()
21 {
22     cout << "Point4 destructor: ";
23     print();
24     cout << endl;
25 }

```

Output message to demonstrate constructor function call order.

Output message to demonstrate destructor function call order.

point4.cpp (1 of 3)

Outline 71

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.30: **Point4** class header file and **Point4** base class contains a constructor and a destructor. (part 1 of 2)

```

26
27 } // end Point4 destructor
28
29 // set x in coordinate pair
30 void Point4::setX( int xValue )
31 {
32     x = xValue; // no need for validation
33 }
34 // end function setX
35
36 // return x from coordinate pair
37 int Point4::getX() const
38 {
39     return x;
40 }
41 // end function getX
42
43 // set y in coordinate pair
44 void Point4::setY( int yValue )
45 {
46     y = yValue; // no need for validation
47 }
48 // end function setY
49

```


[Outline](#)

72

point4.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

50 // return y from coordinate pair
51 int Point4::getY() const
52 {
53     return y;
54 }
55 // end function getY
56
57 // output Point4 object
58 void Point4::print() const
59 {
60     cout << '[' << getX() << ", " << getY() << ']'<< endl;
61 }
62 // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

73

point4.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.31: **Point4** base class contains a constructor and a destructor. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 9.27: circle5.h
2 // Circle5 class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE5_H
4 #define CIRCLE5_H
5
6 #include "point4.h" // Point4 class definition
7
8 class Circle5 : public Point4 {
9
10 public:
11
12 // default constructor
13 Circle5( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15 ~Circle5(); // destructor
16 void setRadius( double ); // set radius
17 double getRadius() const; // return radius
18
19 double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
20 double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
21 double getArea() const; // return area
22
23 void print() const; // output Circle5 object
24
25 private:
26 double radius; // Circle5's radius
27
28 }; // end class Circle5
29
30 #endif

```

74

 [Outline](#)

 circle5.h (1 of 2)

Constructor and destructor output messages to demonstrate function call order.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

25 private:
26 double radius; // Circle5's radius
27
28 }; // end class Circle5
29
30 #endif

```

75

 [Outline](#)

 circle5.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.32: Circle5 class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 9.28: circle5.cpp
2 // Circle5 class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7
8 #include "circle5.h" // Circle5 class definition
9
10 // default constructor
11 Circle5::Circle5( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue )
12 : Point4( xValue, yValue ) // call base
13 {
14     setRadius( radiusValue );
15
16     cout << "Circle5 constructor: ";
17     print();
18     cout << endl;
19 }
20 // end Circle5 constructor
21

```

76

Outline

circle5.cpp (1 of 4)

Output message to demonstrate constructor function call order.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

22 // destructor
23 Circle5::~Circle5()
24 {
25     cout << "Circle5 destructor: ";
26     print();
27     cout << endl;
28 }
29 // end Circle5 destructor
30
31 // set radius
32 void Circle5::setRadius( double radiusValue )
33 {
34     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
35 }
36 // end function setRadius
37
38 // return radius
39 double Circle5::getRadius() const
40 {
41     return radius;
42 }
43 // end function getRadius
44

```

77

Outline

circle5.cpp (2 of 4)

Output message to demonstrate destructor function call order.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.33: **Circle5** class inherits from class **Point4**. (part 1 of 2)



```
45 // calculate and return diameter
46 double Circle5::getDiameter() const
47 {
48     return 2 * getRadius();
49 }
50 // end function getDiameter
51
52 // calculate and return circumference
53 double Circle5::getCircumference() const
54 {
55     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
56 }
57 // end function getCircumference
58
59 // calculate and return area
60 double Circle5::getArea() const
61 {
62     return 3.14159 * getRadius() * getRadius();
63 }
64 // end function getArea
65
```

 [Outline](#) <sup>78</sup>  
 circle5.cpp (3 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
66 // output Circle5 object
67 void Circle5::print() const
68 {
69     cout << "Center = ";
70     Point4::print(); // invoke Point4's print function
71     cout << "; Radius = " << getRadius();
72 }
73 // end function print
```

 [Outline](#) <sup>79</sup>  
 circle5.cpp (4 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 4.34: **Circle5** class inherits from class **Point4**. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 9.29: fig09_29.cpp
2 // Display order in which base-class and derived-class
3 // constructors are called.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 #include "circle5.h" // Circle5 class definition
10
11 int main()
12 {
13     { // begin new scope
14
15         Point4 point( 11, 22 );
16
17     } // end scope
18
19     cout << endl;
20     Circle5 circle1( 72, 29, 4.5 );
21
22     cout << endl;
23     Circle5 circle2( 5, 5, 10 );
24
25     cout << endl;

```

Point4 object goes in and out of scope immediately.

Instantiate two Circle5 objects to demonstrate order of derived-class and base-class constructor/destructor function calls.

80

Outline

fig09\_29.cpp (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved.

```

26
27     return 0; // indicates successful termination
28
29 } // end main

```

```

Point4 constructor: [11, 22]
Point4 destructor: [11, 22]

Point4 constructor: [72, 29]
Circle5 constructor: Center = [72, 29]; Radius = 4.5

Point4 constructor: [5, 5]
Circle5 constructor: Center = [5, 5]; Radius = 10

Circle5 destructor: Center = [5, 5]; Radius = 10
Point4 destructor: [5, 5]
Circle5 destructor: Center = [72, 29]; Radius = 4.5
Point4 destructor: [72, 29]

```

Point4 constructor called for object in block; destructor

Derived-class Circle5 constructor body executes

Derived-class Circle5 constructor body executes

Destructors for Circle5 object called in reverse order

Destructors for Circle5 object called in reverse order of constructors.

81

Outline

fig09\_29.cpp (2 of 2)

fig09\_29.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved.

Figure 4.35: Constructor and destructor call order.

## 9.8 public, protected and private Inheritance

83

Base class member access specifier	Type of inheritance		
	public inheritance	protected inheritance	private inheritance
<b>Public</b>	<b>public</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by any non- <b>static</b> member functions, <b>friend</b> functions and non-member functions.	<b>protected</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by all non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions.	<b>private</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by all non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions.
<b>Protected</b>	<b>protected</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by all non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions.	<b>protected</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by all non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions.	<b>private</b> in derived class. Can be accessed directly by all non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions.
<b>Private</b>	Hidden in derived class. Can be accessed by non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions through <b>public</b> or <b>protected</b> member functions of	Hidden in derived class. Can be accessed by non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions through <b>public</b> or <b>protected</b> member functions of the base class.	Hidden in derived class. Can be accessed by non- <b>static</b> member functions and <b>friend</b> functions through <b>public</b> or <b>protected</b> member functions of the base class.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved.



Figure 4.36: Summary of base-class member accessibility in a derived class.



# Chapter 5

## Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism

### 5.1 Introduction

- Polymorphism
  - ”Program in the general”
  - Treat objects in same class hierarchy as if all base class
  - Virtual functions and dynamic binding; will explain how polymorphism works
  - Makes programs extensible; new classes added easily, can still be processed
- In our examples
  - Use abstract base class **Shape**
    - \* Defines common interface (functionality)
    - \* **Point**, **Circle** and **Cylinder** inherit from **Shape**
  - Class **Employee** for a natural example

### 5.2 Relationships Among Objects in an Inheritance Hierarchy

- Previously (Section 9.4),
  - **Circle** inherited from **Point**

- Manipulated **Point** and **Circle** objects using member functions
- Now
  - Invoke functions using base-class/derived-class pointers
  - Introduce **virtual** functions
- Key concept
  - Derived-class object can be treated as base-class object
    - \* "is-a" relationship
    - \* Base class is not a derived class object

### 5.2.1 Invoking Base-Class Functions from Derived-Class Objects

Aim pointers (base, derived) at objects (base, derived)

- Base pointer aimed at base object
- Derived pointer aimed at derived object; both straightforward
- Base pointer aimed at derived object
  - "is a" relationship; **Circle** "is a" **Point**
  - Will invoke base class functions
- Function call depends on the class of the pointer/handle
  - Does not depend on object to which it points
  - With **virtual** functions, this can be changed (more later)

### 5.2.2 Aiming Derived-Class Pointers at Base-Class Objects

- Previous example
  - Aimed base-class pointer at derived object; **Circle** "is a" **Point**
- Aim a derived-class pointer at a base-class object
  - Compiler error

```

1 // Fig. 10.1: point.h
2 // Point class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT_H
4 #define POINT_H
5
6 class Point {
7
8 public:
9     Point( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10
11     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
12     int  getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
13
14     void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
15     int  getY() const; // return y from coordinate pair
16
17     void print() const; // output Point object
18
19 private:
20     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
21     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
22
23 }; // end class Point
24
25 #endif

```

Base class print function.

Outline  
point.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.1: **Point** class header file.

- \* No "is a" relationship
- \* **Point** is not a **Circle**
- \* **Circle** has data/functions that **Point** does not
  - **setRadius** (defined in **Circle**) not defined in **Point**
- Can cast base-object's address to derived-class pointer
  - \* Called downcasting (more in 10.9)
  - \* Allows derived-class functionality

### 5.2.3 Derived-Class Member-Function Calls via Base-Class Pointers

- Handle (pointer/reference)
  - Base-pointer can aim at derived-object; but can only call base-class functions
  - Calling derived-class functions is a compiler error; functions not defined in base-class

```

1 // Fig. 10.2: point.cpp
2 // Point class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Point::Point( int xValue, int yValue )
11     : x( xValue ), y( yValue )
12 {
13     // empty body
14
15 } // end Point constructor
16
17 // set x in coordinate pair
18 void Point::setX( int xValue )
19 {
20     x = xValue; // no need for validation
21
22 } // end function setX
23

```


[Outline](#)

6

point.cpp (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

24 // return x from coordinate pair
25 int Point::getX() const
26 {
27     return x;
28
29 } // end function getX
30
31 // set y in coordinate pair
32 void Point::setY( int yValue )
33 {
34     y = yValue; // no need for validation
35
36 } // end function setY
37
38 // return y from coordinate pair
39 int Point::getY() const
40 {
41     return y;
42
43 } // end function getY
44
45 // output Point object
46 void Point::print() const
47 {
48     cout << '[' << getX() << ", " << getY() << ']'';
49
50 } // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

7

point.cpp (2 of 2)

Output the x,y coordinates of the Point.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.2: **Point** class represents an xy-coordinate pair.



## 5.2. RELATIONSHIPS AMONG OBJECTS IN AN INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 201

```
1 // Fig. 10.3: circle.h
2 // Circle class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE_H
4 #define CIRCLE_H
5
6 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
7
8 class Circle : public Point {
9
10 public:
11
12     // default constructor
13     Circle( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0 );
14
15     void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16     double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18     double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19     double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20     double getArea() const; // return area
21
22     void print() const; // output Circle object
23
24 private:
25     double radius; // Circle's radius
26
27 }; // end class Circle
28
29 #endif
```

Circle inherits from Point, but redefines its print function.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 10.4: circle.cpp
2 // Circle class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle::Circle( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue )
11     : Point( xValue, yValue ) // call base-class constructor
12 {
13     setRadius( radiusValue );
14 } // end Circle constructor
15
16 // set radius
17 void Circle::setRadius( double radiusValue )
18 {
19     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
20 } // end function setRadius
21
22
23
```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.3: Circle class header file.

```

24 // return radius
25 double Circle::getRadius() const
26 {
27     return radius;
28 }
29 // end function getRadius
30
31 // calculate and return diameter
32 double Circle::getDiameter() const
33 {
34     return 2 * getRadius();
35 }
36 // end function getDiameter
37
38 // calculate and return circumference
39 double Circle::getCircumference() const
40 {
41     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
42 }
43 // end function getCircumference
44
45 // calculate and return area
46 double Circle::getArea() const
47 {
48     return 3.14159 * getRadius() * getRadius();
49 }
50 // end function getArea

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.



Outline

10

circle.cpp (2 of 3)

```

51
52 // output Circle object
53 void Circle::print() const
54 {
55     cout << "center = ";
56     Point::print(); // invoke Point's print
57     cout << "; radius = " << getRadius();
58 }
59 // end function print

```

Circle redefines its print function. It calls Point's print function to output the x,y coordinates of the center, then prints the radius.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.



Outline

11

circle.cpp (3 of 3)

Figure 5.4: Circle class that inherits from class Point.

## 5.2. RELATIONSHIPS AMONG OBJECTS IN AN INHERITANCE HIERARCHY 203

```
1 // Fig. 10.5: fig10_05.cpp
2 // Aiming base-class and derived-class pointers at base-class
3 // and derived-class objects, respectively.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8 using std::fixed;
9
10 #include <iomanip>
11
12 using std::setprecision;
13
14 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
15 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
16
17 int main()
18 {
19     Point point( 30, 50 );
20     Point *pointPtr = 0; // base-class pointer
21
22     Circle circle( 120, 89, 2.7 );
23     Circle *circlePtr = 0; // derived-class pointer
24 }
```

▲ Outline 12  
▼  
fig10\_05.cpp  
(1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
25 // set floating-point numeric format
26 cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
27
28 // output objects point and circle
29 cout << "Print point and circle objects\n";
30     << "\nPoint: ";
31     point.print(); // invokes Point's print
32     cout << "\nCircle: ";
33     circle.print(); // invokes Circle's print
34
35 // aim base-class pointer at base-class object and print
36 pointPtr = &point;
37 cout << "\n\nCalling print with base-class pointer to "
38     << "\nbase-class object invokes base-class print "
39     << "function:\n";
40     pointPtr->print(); // invokes Point's print
41
42 // aim derived-class pointer at derived-class object
43 // and print
44 circlePtr = &circle;
45 cout << "\n\nCalling print with derived-class pointer to "
46     << "\nderived-class object invokes derived-class "
47     << "print function:\n";
48     circlePtr->print(); // invokes Circle's print
49
```

Use objects and pointers to call the **print** function. The pointers and objects are of the same class, so the proper **print** function is called.

▲ Outline 13  
▼  
fig10\_05.cpp  
(2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.5: Assigning addresses of base-class and derived-class objects to base-class and derived-class pointers. (part 1 of 2)

```

50 // aim base-class pointer at derived-class object and print
51 pointPtr = &circle;
52 cout << "\n\nCalling print with base-class pointer to "
53     << "derived-class object\ninvokes base-class print "
54     << "function on that derived-class object:\n";
55 pointPtr->print(); // invokes Point's print
56 cout << endl;
57
58 return 0;
59
60 } // end main

```

Aiming a base-class pointer at a derived object is allowed (the `Circle` "is a" `Point`). However, it calls `Point`'s print function, determined by the pointer type. `virtual` functions allow us to change this.

Outline 14  
fig10\_05.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

Print point and circle objects:
Point: [30, 50]
Circle: center = [120, 89]; radius = 2.70

Calling print with base-class pointer to
base-class object invokes base-class print function:
[30, 50]

Calling print with derived-class pointer to
derived-class object invokes derived-class print function:
center = [120, 89]; radius = 2.70

Calling print with base-class pointer to derived-class object
invokes base-class print function on that derived-class object:
[120, 89]

```

Outline 15  
fig10\_05.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.6: Assigning addresses of base-class and derived-class objects to base-class and derived-class pointers. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 10.6: fig10_06.cpp
2 // Aiming a derived-class pointer at a base-class object.
3 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
4 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
5
6 int main()
7 {
8     Point point( 30, 50 );
9     Circle *circlePtr = 0;
10
11     // aim derived-class pointer at base-class object
12     circlePtr = &point; // Error: a Point is not a Circle
13
14     return 0;
15
16 } // end main

```

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10\_06\Fig10\_06.cpp(12) : error C2440:
'=' : cannot convert from 'class Point \*' to 'class Circle \*'
Types pointed to are unrelated; conversion requires
reinterpret\_cast, C-style cast or function-style cast

Outline 17

fig10\_06.cpp (1 of 1)

fig10\_06.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.7: Aiming a derived-class pointer at a base-class object.

- Common theme
  - Data type of pointer/reference determines functions it can call

### 5.2.4 Virtual Functions

- Typically, pointer-class determines functions
- virtual functions; object (not pointer) determines function called
- Why useful?
  - Suppose **Circle**, **Triangle**, **Rectangle** derived from **Shape**; each has own **draw** function
  - To draw any shape

- \* Have base class **Shape** pointer, call **draw**
- \* Program determines proper **draw** function at run time (dynamically)
- \* Treat all shapes generically
- Declare **draw** as virtual in base class
  - Override **draw** in each derived class; like redefining, but new function must have same signature
  - If function declared **virtual**, can only be overridden
    - \* **virtual void draw() const;**
    - \* Once declared **virtual**, **virtual** in all derived classes; good practice to explicitly declare **virtual**
- Dynamic binding
  - Choose proper function to call at run time
  - Only occurs off pointer handles; if function called from object, uses that object's definition
- Example
  - Redo **Point**, **Circle** example with **virtual** functions
  - Base-class pointer to derived-class object; will call derived-class function
- Polymorphism
  - Same message, "print", given to many objects; all through a base pointer
  - Message takes on "many forms"
- Summary
  - Base-pointer to base-object, derived-pointer to derived; straightforward
  - Base-pointer to derived object; can only call base-class functions
  - Derived-pointer to base-object
    - \* Compiler error
    - \* Allowed if explicit cast made (more in section 10.9)

## 5.3 Polymorphism Examples

- Suppose **Rectangle** derives from **Quadrilateral**
  - **Rectangle** more specific **Quadrilateral**
  - Any operation on **Quadrilateral** can be done on **Rectangle** (i.e., perimeter, area)
- Suppose designing video game
  - Base class **SpaceObject**
    - \* Derived **Martian**, **SpaceShip**, **LaserBeam**
    - \* Base function **draw**
  - To refresh screen
    - \* Screen manager has **vector** of base-class pointers to objects
    - \* Send **draw** message to each object
    - \* Same message has "many forms" of results

## 5.4 Type Fields and switch Structures

- One way to determine object's class
  - Give base class an attribute; **shapeType** in class **Shape**
  - Use **switch** to call proper **print** function
- Many problems
  - May forget to test for case in **switch**
  - If add/remove a class, must update **switch** structures; Time consuming and error prone
- Better to use polymorphism
  - Less branching logic, simpler programs, less debugging

## 5.5 Abstract Classes

- Abstract classes
  - Sole purpose: to be a base class (called abstract base classes)

- Incomplete; derived classes fill in “missing pieces”
- Cannot make objects from abstract class; however, can have pointers and references
- Concrete classes
  - Can instantiate objects
  - Implement all functions they define
  - Provide specifics
- Abstract classes not required, but helpful
- To make a class abstract
  - Need one or more “pure” virtual functions
    - \* Declare function with initializer of 0
    - \* **virtual void draw() const = 0;**
  - Regular virtual functions; have implementations, overriding is optional
  - Pure virtual functions; no implementation, must be overridden
  - Abstract classes can have data and concrete functions; required to have one or more pure virtual functions
- Abstract base class pointers; useful for polymorphism
- Application example
  - Abstract class **Shape**; defines **draw** as pure virtual function
  - **Circle**, **Triangle**, **Rectangle** derived from **Shape**; each must implement **draw**
  - Screen manager knows that each object can draw itself
- Iterators (more Chapter 21)
  - Walk through elements in **vector**/array
  - Use base-class pointer to send **draw** message to each



```
1 // Fig. 10.7: fig10_07.cpp
2 // Attempting to invoke derived-class-only member functions
3 // through a base-class pointer.
4 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
5 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
6
7 int main()
8 {
9     Point *pointPtr = 0;
10    Circle circle( 120, 89, 2.7 );
11
12    // aim base-class pointer at derived-class object
13    pointPtr = &circle;
14
15    // invoke base-class member functions on derived-class
16    // object through base-class pointer
17    int x = pointPtr->getX();
18    int y = pointPtr->getY();
19    pointPtr->setX( 10 );
20    pointPtr->setY( 10 );
21    pointPtr->print();
22
```

[Outline](#)

19

fig10\_07.cpp  
(1 of 2)

Figure 5.8: Attempting to invoke derived-class-only functions via a base-class pointer. (part 1 of 2)

```

23 // attempt to invoke derived-class-only member functions
24 // on derived-class object through base-class pointer
25 double radius = pointPtr->getRadius();
26 pointPtr->setRadius( 33.33 );
27 double diameter = pointPtr->getDiameter();
28 double circumference = pointPtr->getCircumference();
29 double area = pointPtr->getArea();
30
31 return 0;
32
33 } // end main

```

These functions are only defined in `Circle`. However, `pointPtr` is of class `Point`.

Outline 20  
fig10\_07.cpp (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\fig10_07.cpp(25) : error C2039:
'getRadius' : is not a member of 'Point'
    C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\point.h(6) :
    see declaration of 'Point'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\fig10_07.cpp(26) : error C2039:
'setRadius' : is not a member of 'Point'
    C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\point.h(6) :
    see declaration of 'Point'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\fig10_07.cpp(27) : error C2039:
'getDiameter' : is not a member of 'Point'
    C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\point.h(6) :
    see declaration of 'Point'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\fig10_07.cpp(28) : error C2039:
'getCircumference' : is not a member of 'Point'
    C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\point.h(6) :
    see declaration of 'Point'

C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\fig10_07.cpp(29) : error C2039:
'getArea' : is not a member of 'Point'
    C:\cpphtp4\examples\ch10\fig10_07\point.h(6) :
    see declaration of 'Point'

```

Outline 21  
fig10\_07.cpp output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.9: Attempting to invoke derived-class-only functions via a base-class pointer. (part 2 of 2)

```

1 // Fig. 10.8: point.h
2 // Point class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT_H
4 #define POINT_H
5
6 class Point {
7
8 public:
9     Point( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
10
11     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
12     int getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
13
14     void setY( int ); // set y in
15     int getY() const; // return y
16
17     virtual void print() const; // output Point object
18
19 private:
20     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
21     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
22
23 }; // end class Point
24
25 #endif

```

Print declared virtual. It will be virtual in all derived classes.

Outline 25  
point.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 10.9: circle.h
2 // Circle class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE_H
4 #define CIRCLE_H
5
6 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
7
8 class Circle : public Point {
9
10 public:
11
12     // default constructor
13     Circle( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15     void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16     double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18     double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19     double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20     double getArea() const; // return area
21
22     virtual void print() const; // output Circle object
23
24 private:
25     double radius; // Circle's radius
26
27 }; // end class Circle
28
29 #endif

```

Outline 26  
circle.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.10: **Point** class header file declares **print** function as **virtual** (upper) and **Circle** class header file declares **print** function as **virtual**.

```

1 // Fig. 10.10: fig10_10.cpp
2 // Introducing polymorphism, virtual functions and dynamic
3 // binding.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8 using std::fixed;
9
10 #include <iomanip>
11
12 using std::setprecision;
13
14 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
15 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
16
17 int main()
18 {
19     Point point( 30, 50 );
20     Point *pointPtr = 0;
21
22     Circle circle( 120, 89, 2.7 );
23     Circle *circlePtr = 0;
24

```


[Outline](#)

27

 fig10\_10.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

25 // set floating-point numeric formatting
26 cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
27
28 // output objects point and circle using static binding
29 cout << "Invoking print function on point and circle "
30     << "\nobjects with static binding "
31     << "\n\nPoint: ";
32 point.print(); // static binding
33 cout << "\n\nCircle: ";
34 circle.print(); // static binding
35
36 // output objects point and circle using dynamic binding
37 cout << "\n\nInvoking print function on point and circle "
38     << "\nobjects with dynamic binding";
39
40 // aim base-class pointer at base-class object and print
41 pointPtr = &point;
42 cout << "\n\nCalling virtual function print with base-class"
43     << "\npointer to base-class object"
44     << "\n\ninvokes base-class print function:\n";
45 pointPtr->print();
46

```


[Outline](#)

28

 fig10\_10.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 5.11: Demonstrating polymorphism by invoking a derived-class virtual function via a base-class pointer to a derived-class object. (part 1 of 2)

```

47 // aim derived-class pointer at derived-class
48 // object and print
49 circlePtr = &circle;
50 cout << "\n\nCalling virtual function print with "
51 << "\nderived-class pointer to derived-class object "
52 << "\ninvoles derived-class print function:\n";
53 circlePtr->print();
54
55 // aim base-class pointer at derived-class object and print
56 pointPtr = &circle;
57 cout << "\n\nCalling virtual function print with base-class"
58 << "\npointer to derived-class object "
59 << "\ninvoles derived-class print function:\n";
60 pointPtr->print(); // polymorphism: invokes circle's print
61 cout << endl;
62
63 return 0;
64
65 } // end main

```

At run time, the program determines that `pointPtr` is aiming at a `Circle` object, and calls `Circle`'s print function. This is an example of polymorphism.

Outline 29  
fig10\_10.cpp  
(3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

Invoking print function on point and circle
objects with static binding

Point: [30, 50]
Circle: Center = [120, 89]; Radius = 2.70

Invoking print function on point and circle
objects with dynamic binding

Calling virtual function print with base-class
pointer to base-class object
invokes base-class print function:
[30, 50]

Calling virtual function print with
derived-class pointer to derived-class object
invokes derived-class print function:
Center = [120, 89]; Radius = 2.70

Calling virtual function print with base-class
pointer to derived-class object
invokes derived-class print function:
Center = [120, 89]; Radius = 2.70

```

Outline 30  
fig10\_10.cpp  
output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.12: Demonstrating polymorphism by invoking a derived-class virtual function via a base-class pointer to a derived-class object. (part 2 of 2)

## 5.6 Case Study: Inheriting Interface and Implementation

Make abstract base class Shape

- Pure virtual functions (must be implemented)
  - `getName`, `print`
  - Default implementation does not make sense
- Virtual functions (may be redefined)
  - `getArea`, `getVolume`; initially return `0.0`
  - If not redefined, uses base class definition
- Derive classes `Point`, `Circle`, `Cylinder`

### 10.6 Case Study: Inheriting Interface and Implementation

39

	<code>getArea</code>	<code>getVolume</code>	<code>getName</code>	<code>print</code>
<code>Shape</code>	<code>0.0</code>	<code>0.0</code>	<code>= 0</code>	<code>= 0</code>
<code>Point</code>	<code>0.0</code>	<code>0.0</code>	<code>"Point"</code>	<code>[x, y]</code>
<code>Circle</code>	$\pi r^2$	<code>0.0</code>	<code>"Circle"</code>	<code>center=[x, y]; radius=r</code>
<code>Cylinder</code>	$2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r h$	$\pi r^2 h$	<code>"Cylinder"</code>	<code>center=[x, y]; radius=r; height=h</code>

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc. All rights reserved.



Figure 5.13: Defining the polymorphic interface for the `Shape` hierarchy classes.

## 5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 215

```
1 // Fig. 10.12: shape.h
2 // Shape abstract-base-class definition.
3 #ifndef SHAPE_H
4 #define SHAPE_H
5
6 #include <string> // C++ standard string class
7
8 using std::string;
9
10 class Shape {
11
12 public:
13
14 // virtual function that returns shape area
15 virtual double getArea() const;
16
17 // virtual function that returns shape volume
18 virtual double getVolume() const;
19
20 // pure virtual functions; overridden in derived classes
21 virtual string getName() const = 0; // return shape name
22 virtual void print() const = 0; // output shape
23
24 }; // end class Shape
25
26 #endif
```

Virtual and pure virtual functions.

40

Outline

shape.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 10.13: shape.cpp
2 // Shape class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "shape.h" // Shape class definition
8
9 // return area of shape; 0.0 by default
10 double getArea() const
11 {
12     return 0.0;
13 } // end function getArea
14
15 // return volume of shape; 0.0 by default
16 double getVolume() const
17 {
18     return 0.0;
19 } // end function getVolume
20
21 }
```

41

Outline

shape.cpp (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.14: Abstract base class **Shape** header file and Abstract base class **Shape**.

```

1 // Fig. 10.14: point.h
2 // Point class definition represents an x-y coordinate pair.
3 #ifndef POINT_H
4 #define POINT_H
5
6 #include "shape.h" // Shape class definition
7
8 class Point : public Shape {
9
10 public:
11     Point( int = 0, int = 0 ); // default constructor
12
13     void setX( int ); // set x in coordinate pair
14     int  getX() const; // return x from coordinate pair
15
16     void setY( int ); // set y in coordinate pair
17     int  getY() const; // return y from coordinate pair
18
19     // return name of shape (i.e., "Point" )
20     virtual string getName() const;
21
22     virtual void print() const; // output Point object
23
24 private:
25     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
26     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
27
28 }; // end class Point
29
30 #endif

```

42

[Outline](#)

point.h (1 of 2)

Point only redefines `getName` and `print`, since `getArea` and `getVolume` are zero (it can use the default implementation).

```

24 private:
25     int x; // x part of coordinate pair
26     int y; // y part of coordinate pair
27
28 }; // end class Point
29
30 #endif

```

43

[Outline](#)

point.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.15: **Point** class header file.





## 5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 217

```
1 // Fig. 10.15: point.cpp
2 // Point class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Point::Point( int xValue, int yValue )
11     : x( xValue ), y( yValue )
12 {
13     // empty body
14 }
15 // end Point constructor
16
17 // set x in coordinate pair
18 void Point::setX( int xValue )
19 {
20     x = xValue; // no need for validation
21 }
22 // end function setX
23
```

 [Outline](#) 44  
 point.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
24 // return x from coordinate pair
25 int Point::getX() const
26 {
27     return x;
28 }
29 // end function getX
30
31 // set y in coordinate pair
32 void Point::setY( int yValue )
33 {
34     y = yValue; // no need for validation
35 }
36 // end function setY
37
38 // return y from coordinate pair
39 int Point::getY() const
40 {
41     return y;
42 }
43 // end function getY
44
```

 [Outline](#) 45  
 point.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.16: **Point** class implementation file. (part 1 of 2)

```

45 // override pure virtual function getName: return name of Point
46 string Point::getName() const
47 {
48     return "Point";
49 }
50 // end function getName
51
52 // override pure virtual function print: output Point object
53 void Point::print() const
54 {
55     cout << '[' << getX() << ", " << getY() << ']' ;
56 }
57 // end function print

```

Must override pure virtual functions `getName` and `print`.

Outline  
point.cpp (3 of 3)

46

```

1 // Fig. 10.16: circle.h
2 // Circle class contains x-y coordinate pair and radius.
3 #ifndef CIRCLE_H
4 #define CIRCLE_H
5
6 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
7
8 class Circle : public Point {
9
10 public:
11
12     // default constructor
13     Circle( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0 );
14
15     void setRadius( double ); // set radius
16     double getRadius() const; // return radius
17
18     double getDiameter() const; // return diameter
19     double getCircumference() const; // return circumference
20     virtual double getArea() const; // return area
21
22     // return name of shape (i.e., "Circle")
23     virtual string getName() const;
24
25     virtual void print() const; // output Circle object

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Outline  
circle.h (1 of 2)


47

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.17: **Point** class implementation file. (part 2 of 2)

## 5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 219

```
26
27 private:
28     double radius; // Circle's radius
29
30 }; // end class Circle
31
32 #endif
```




[Outline](#) 48

circle.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 10.17: circle.cpp
2 // Circle class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Circle::Circle( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue )
11     : Point( xValue, yValue ) // call base-class constructor
12 {
13     setRadius( radiusValue );
14 } // end Circle constructor
15
16 // set radius
17 void Circle::setRadius( double radiusValue )
18 {
19     radius = ( radiusValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : radiusValue );
20 } // end function setRadius
21
22
23
```



[Outline](#) 49

circle.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.18: **Circle** class header file and **Circle** class that inherits from class **Point**. (part 1 of 2)

```

24 // return radius
25 double Circle::getRadius() const
26 {
27     return radius;
28 }
29 // end function getRadius
30
31 // calculate and return diameter
32 double Circle::getDiameter() const
33 {
34     return 2 * getRadius();
35 }
36 // end function getDiameter
37
38 // calculate and return circumference
39 double Circle::getCircumference() const
40 {
41     return 3.14159 * getDiameter();
42 }
43 // end function getCircumference
44

```


[Outline](#)

50

circle.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

45 // override virtual function getArea: return area of Circle
46 double Circle::getArea() const
47 {
48     return 3.14159 * getRadius() * getRadius();
49 }
50 // end function getArea
51
52 // override virtual function getName
53 string Circle::getName() const
54 {
55     return "Circle";
56 }
57 // end function getName
58
59 // override virtual function print: output Circle object
60 void Circle::print() const
61 {
62     cout << "center is ";
63     Point::print(); // invoke Point's print function
64     cout << ", radius is " << getRadius();
65 }
66 // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

51

circle.cpp (3 of 3)

Override `getArea` because it  
now applies to `Circle`.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.19: **Circle** class that inherits from class **Point**. (part 2 of 2)

## 5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 221

```
1 // Fig. 10.18: cylinder.h
2 // Cylinder class inherits from class Circle.
3 #ifndef CYLINDER_H
4 #define CYLINDER_H
5
6 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
7
8 class Cylinder : public Circle {
9
10 public:
11
12     // default constructor
13     Cylinder( int = 0, int = 0, double = 0.0, double = 0.0 );
14
15     void setHeight( double ); // set Cylinder's height
16     double getHeight() const; // return Cylinder's height
17
18     virtual double getArea() const; // return Cylinder's area
19     virtual double getVolume() const; // return Cylinder's volume
20
21     // return name of shape (i.e., "Cylinder" )
22     virtual string getName() const;
23
24     virtual void print() const; // output Cylinder
25
26 private:
27     double height; // Cylinder's height
28
29 }; // end class Cylinder
30
31 #endif
```


52

 [Outline](#)

 cylinder.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

53

 [Outline](#)

 cylinder.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.20: **Cylinder** class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 10.19: cylinder.cpp
2 // Cylinder class inherits from class Circle.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "cylinder.h" // Cylinder class definition
8
9 // default constructor
10 Cylinder::Cylinder( int xValue, int yValue, double radiusValue,
11 double heightValue )
12 : Circle( xValue, yValue, radiusValue )
13 {
14     setHeight( heightValue );
15 }
16 // end Cylinder constructor
17
18 // set Cylinder's height
19 void Cylinder::setHeight( double heightValue )
20 {
21     height = ( heightValue < 0.0 ? 0.0 : heightValue );
22 }
23 // end function setHeight

```


[Outline](#)

54

 cylinder.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

24
25 // get Cylinder's height
26 double Cylinder::getHeight() const
27 {
28     return height;
29 }
30 // end function getHeight
31
32 // override virtual function getArea: return Cylinder area
33 double Cylinder::getArea() const
34 {
35     return 2 * Circle::getArea() + // code reuse
36         getCircumference() * getHeight();
37 }
38 // end function getArea
39
40 // override virtual function getVolume: return Cylinder volume
41 double Cylinder::getVolume() const
42 {
43     return Circle::getArea() * getHeight(); // code reuse
44 }
45 // end function getVolume
46

```


[Outline](#)

55



 cylinder.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 5.21: **Cylinder** class implementation file. (part 1 of 2)


## 5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 223

```
47 // override virtual function getName: return name of Cylinder
48 string Cylinder::getName() const
49 {
50     return "Cylinder";
51 }
52 // end function getName
53
54 // output Cylinder object
55 void Cylinder::print() const
56 {
57     Circle::print(); // code reuse
58     cout << ", height is " << getHeight();
59 }
60 // end function print
```

 [Outline](#) 56  
 cylinder.cpp  
(3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 10.20: fig10_20.cpp
2 // Driver for shape, point, circle, cylinder hierarchy.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include <vector>
14
15 using std::vector;
16
17 #include "shape.h" // Shape class definition
18 #include "point.h" // Point class definition
19 #include "circle.h" // Circle class definition
20 #include "cylinder.h" // Cylinder class definition
21
22 void virtualViaPointer( const Shape * );
23 void virtualViaReference( const Shape & );
24
```

 [Outline](#) 57  
 fig10\_20.cpp  
(1 of 5)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.22: **Cylinder** class implementation file. (part 2 of 2)

```

25 int main()
26 {
27     // set floating-point number format
28     cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
29
30     Point point( 7, 11 );           // create a Point
31     Circle circle( 22, 8, 3.5 );   // create a Circle
32     Cylinder cylinder( 10, 10, 3.3, 10 ); // create a Cylinder
33
34     cout << point.getName() << " "; // static binding
35     point.print();                 // static binding
36     cout << '\n';
37
38     cout << circle.getName() << " "; // static binding
39     circle.print();               // static binding
40     cout << '\n';
41
42     cout << cylinder.getName() << " "; // static binding
43     cylinder.print();             // static binding
44     cout << "\n\n";
45

```



Outline

58

fig10\_20.cpp  
(2 of 5)© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

46 // create vector of three base-class pointers
47 vector< Shape * > shapeVector( 3 );
48
49 // aim shapeVector[0] at derived-class P
50 shapeVector[ 0 ] = &point;
51
52 // aim shapeVector[1] at derived-class C
53 shapeVector[ 1 ] = &circle;
54
55 // aim shapeVector[2] at derived-class C
56 shapeVector[ 2 ] = &cylinder;
57
58 // loop through shapeVector and call virtualViaPointer
59 // to print the shape name, attributes,
60 // of each object using dynamic binding
61 cout << "\nVirtual function calls made off "
62     << "base-class pointers:\n\n";
63
64 for ( int i = 0; i < shapeVector.size(); i++ )
65     virtualViaPointer( shapeVector[ i ] );
66

```



Outline

59

fig10\_20.cpp  
(3 of 5)

Create a vector of generic **Shape** pointers, and aim them at various objects.

Function **virtualViaPointer** calls the virtual functions (**print**, **getName**, etc.) using the base-class pointers.

The types are dynamically bound at run-time.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.23: Demonstrating polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 1 of 3)



5.6. CASE STUDY: INHERITING INTERFACE AND IMPLEMENTATION 225

```

67 // loop through shapeVector and call virtualViaReference
68 // to print the shape name, attributes, area and volume
69 // of each object using dynamic binding
70 cout << "\nVirtual function calls made\n";
71     << "base-class references:\n\n";
72
73 for ( int j = 0; j < shapeVector.size(); j++ )
74     virtualViaReference( *shapeVector[ j ] );
75
76 return 0;
77
78 } // end main
79
80 // make virtual function calls off a base-class pointer
81 // using dynamic binding
82 void virtualViaPointer( const Shape *baseClassPtr )
83 {
84     cout << baseClassPtr->getName() << ": ";
85
86     baseClassPtr->print();
87
88     cout << "\narea is " << baseClassPtr->getArea()
89         << "\nvolume is " << baseClassPtr->getVolume()
90         << "\n\n";
91 } // end function virtualViaPointer
92
93

```

Use references instead of pointers, for the same effect.

Call virtual functions; the proper class function will be called at run-time.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

60  
[Outline](#)  
 fig10\_20.cpp  
 (4 of 5)

```

94 // make virtual function calls off a base-class reference
95 // using dynamic binding
96 void virtualViaReference( const Shape &baseClassRef )
97 {
98     cout << baseClassRef.getName() << ": ";
99
100    baseClassRef.print();
101
102    cout << "\narea is " << baseClassRef.getArea()
103        << "\nvolume is " << baseClassRef.getVolume() << "\n\n";
104 } // end function virtualViaReference
105

```

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

61  
[Outline](#)  
 fig10\_20.cpp  
 (5 of 5)

Figure 5.24: Demonstrating polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 2 of 3)

```

Point: [7, 11]
Circle: center is [22, 8]; radius is 3.50
Cylinder: center is [10, 10]; radius is 3.30; height is 10.00

Virtual function calls made off base-class pointers:

Point: [7, 11]
area is 0.00
volume is 0.00

Circle: center is [22, 8]; radius is 3.50
area is 38.48
volume is 0.00

Cylinder: center is [10, 10]; radius is 3.30; height is 10.00
area is 275.77
volume is 342.12

```


[Outline](#)

62

 fig10\_20.cpp  
 output (1 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

Virtual function calls made off base-class references:

Point: [7, 11]
area is 0.00
volume is 0.00

Circle: center is [22, 8]; radius is 3.50
area is 38.48
volume is 0.00

Cylinder: center is [10, 10]; radius is 3.30; height is 10.00
area is 275.77
volume is 342.12

```


[Outline](#)

63

 fig10\_20.cpp  
 output (2 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

Figure 5.25: Demonstrating polymorphism via a hierarchy headed by an abstract base class. (part 3 of 3)

## 5.7 Polymorphism, Virtual Functions and Dynamic Binding "Under the Hood"

- Polymorphism has overhead
  - Not used in STL (Standard Template Library) to optimize performance
- virtual function table (vtable)
  - Every class with a **virtual** function has a vtable
  - For every **virtual** function, vtable has pointer to the proper function
  - If derived class has same function as base class; function pointer aims at base-class function
  - Detailed explanation in Fig. 10.21 (in book) (will not be covered)

## 5.8 Virtual Destructors

- Base class pointer to derived object; if destroyed using **delete**, behavior unspecified
- Simple fix
  - Declare base-class destructor virtual; makes derived-class destructors virtual
  - Now, when **delete** used appropriate destructor called
- When derived-class object destroyed
  - Derived-class destructor executes first
  - Base-class destructor executes afterwards
- Constructors cannot be virtual

## 5.9 Case Study: Payroll System Using Polymorphism

- Base class Employee

- Pure virtual function **earnings** (returns pay)
  - \* Pure virtual because need to know employee type
  - \* Cannot calculate for generic employee
- Other classes derive from **Employee**

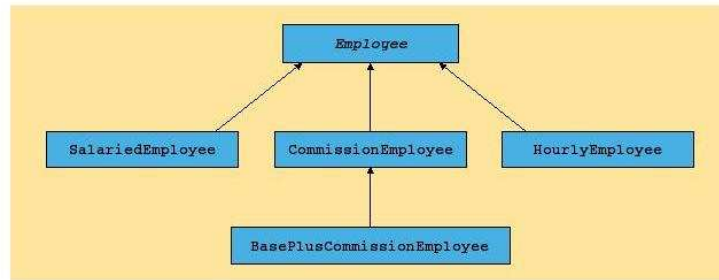



Figure 5.26: Class hierarchy for the polymorphic employee-payroll application.

- Downcasting
  - **dynamic\_cast** operator
    - \* Determine object's type at runtime
    - \* Returns 0 if not of proper type (cannot be cast)
    - \* `NewClass *ptr = dynamic_cast < NewClass *> objectPtr;`
- Keyword `typeid`
  - Header `<typeinfo>`
  - Usage: `typeid(object)`
    - \* Returns `type_info` object
    - \* Has information about type of operand, including name
    - \* `typeid(object).name()`


5.9. CASE STUDY: PAYROLL SYSTEM USING POLYMORPHISM 229

```
1 // Fig. 10.23: employee.h
2 // Employee abstract base class.
3 #ifndef EMPLOYEE_H
4 #define EMPLOYEE_H
5
6 #include <string> // C++ standard string class
7
8 using std::string;
9
10 class Employee {
11
12 public:
13     Employee( const string &, const string &, const string & );
14
15     void setFirstName( const string & );
16     string getFirstName() const;
17
18     void setLastName( const string & );
19     string getLastName() const;
20
21     void setSocialSecurityNumber( const string & );
22     string getSocialSecurityNumber() const;
23
```

 [Outline](#) 69  
employee.h (1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
24 // pure virtual function makes Employee abstract base class
25 virtual double earnings() const = 0; // pure virtual
26 virtual void print() const; // virtual
27
28 private:
29     string firstName;
30     string lastName;
31     string socialSecurityNumber;
32
33 }; // end class Employee
34
35 #endif // EMPLOYEE_H
```

 [Outline](#) 70  
employee.h (2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.27: **Employee** class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 10.24: employee.cpp
2 // Abstract-base-class Employee member-function definitions.
3 // Note: No definitions are given for pure virtual functions.
4 #include <iostream>
5
6 using std::cout;
7 using std::endl;
8
9 #include "employee.h" // Employee class definition
10
11 // constructor
12 Employee::Employee( const string &first, const string &last,
13     const string &SSN )
14     : firstName( first ),
15       lastName( last ),
16       socialSecurityNumber( SSN )
17 {
18     // empty body
19 }
20 // end Employee constructor
21

```


[Outline](#)

71

 employee.cpp  
 (1 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

22 // return first name
23 string Employee::getFirstName() const
24 {
25     return firstName;
26 }
27 // end function getFirstName
28
29 // return last name
30 string Employee::getLastName() const
31 {
32     return lastName;
33 }
34 // end function getLastName
35
36 // return social security number
37 string Employee::getSocialSecurityNumber() const
38 {
39     return socialSecurityNumber;
40 }
41 // end function getSocialSecurityNumber
42
43 // set first name
44 void Employee::setFirstName( const string &first )
45 {
46     firstName = first;
47 }
48 // end function setFirstName
49

```


[Outline](#)

72

 employee.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 5.28: **Employee** class implementation file. (part 1 of 2)

5.9. CASE STUDY: PAYROLL SYSTEM USING POLYMORPHISM 231

```

50 // set last name
51 void Employee::setLastName( const string &last )
52 {
53     lastName = last;
54 }
55 // end function setLastName
56
57 // set social security number
58 void Employee::setSocialSecurityNumber( const string &number )
59 {
60     socialSecurityNumber = number; // should validate
61 }
62 // end function setSocialSecurityNumber
63
64 // print Employee's information
65 void Employee::print() const
66 {
67     cout << getFirstName() << ' ' << getLastName()
68         << "\nsocial security number: "
69         << getSocialSecurityNumber() << endl;
70 }
71 // end function print
    
```

73

Outline

employee.cpp  
(3 of 3)

Default implementation for virtual function print.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 10.25: salaried.h
2 // SalariedEmployee class derived from Employee.
3 #ifndef SALARIED_H
4 #define SALARIED_H
5
6 #include "employee.h" // Employee class definition
7
8 class SalariedEmployee : public Employee {
9
10 public:
11     SalariedEmployee( const string &, const
12         const string &, double = 0.0 );
13
14     void setWeeklySalary( double );
15     double getWeeklySalary() const;
16
17     virtual double earnings() const;
18     virtual void print() const; // "salaried employee: "
19
20 private:
21     double weeklySalary;
22
23 }; // end class SalariedEmployee
24
25 #endif // SALARIED_H
    
```

74

Outline

salaried.h (1 of 1)

New functions for the SalariedEmployee class.  
earnings must be overridden. print is overridden to specify that this is a salaried employee.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.29: **Employee** class implementation file (part 2 of 2) and **SalariedEmployee** class header file.

```

1 // Fig. 10.26: salaried.cpp
2 // SalariedEmployee class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "salaried.h" // SalariedEmployee class definition
8
9 // SalariedEmployee constructor
10 SalariedEmployee::SalariedEmployee
11     const string &last, const string &first, const string &socialSecurityNumber,
12     double salary )
13     : Employee( first, last, socialSecurityNumber )
14     {
15     setWeeklySalary( salary );
16     }
17 // end SalariedEmployee constructor
18
19 // set salaried employee's salary
20 void SalariedEmployee::setWeeklySalary( double salary )
21 {
22     weeklySalary = salary < 0.0 ? 0.0 : salary;
23 }
24 // end function setWeeklySalary
25

```

75

[Outline](#)

salaried.cpp  
(1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

26 // calculate salaried employee's pay
27 double SalariedEmployee::earnings() const
28 {
29     return getWeeklySalary();
30 }
31 // end function earnings
32
33 // return salaried employee's salary
34 double SalariedEmployee::getWeeklySalary() const
35 {
36     return weeklySalary;
37 }
38 // end function getWeeklySalary
39
40 // print salaried employee's name
41 void SalariedEmployee::print() const
42 {
43     cout << "\nsalaried employee: ";
44     Employee::print(); // code reuse
45 }
46 // end function print

```

76

[Outline](#)

salaried.cpp  
(2 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.30: SalariedEmployee class implementation file.



```

1 // Fig. 10.27: hourly.h
2 // HourlyEmployee class definition.
3 #ifndef HOURLY_H
4 #define HOURLY_H
5
6 #include "employee.h" // Employee class definition
7
8 class HourlyEmployee : public Employee {
9
10 public:
11     HourlyEmployee( const string &, const string &,
12                   const string &, double = 0.0, double = 0.0 );
13
14     void setWage( double );
15     double getWage() const;
16
17     void setHours( double );
18     double getHours() const;
19
20     virtual double earnings() const;
21     virtual void print() const;
22
23 private:
24     double wage; // wage per hour
25     double hours; // hours worked for week
26
27 }; // end class HourlyEmployee
28
29 #endif // HOURLY_H

```




[Outline](#) <sup>77</sup>

hourly.h (1 of 1)

```

1 // Fig. 10.28: hourly.cpp
2 // HourlyEmployee class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "hourly.h"
8
9 // constructor for class HourlyEmployee
10 HourlyEmployee::HourlyEmployee( const string &first,
11                                const string &last, const string &socialSecurityNumber,
12                                double hourlyWage, double hoursWorked )
13     : Employee( first, last, socialSecurityNumber )
14 {
15     setWage( hourlyWage );
16     setHours( hoursWorked );
17
18 } // end HourlyEmployee constructor
19
20 // set hourly employee's wage
21 void HourlyEmployee::setWage( double wageAmount )
22 {
23     wage = wageAmount < 0.0 ? 0.0 : wageAmount;
24
25 } // end function setWage

```




[Outline](#) <sup>78</sup>

hourly.cpp (1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.31: HourlyEmployee class header file.

```

26
27 // set hourly employee's hours worked
28 void HourlyEmployee::setHours( double hoursWorked )
29 {
30     hours = ( hoursWorked >= 0.0 && hoursWorked <= 168.0 ) ?
31         hoursWorked : 0.0;
32
33 } // end function setHours
34
35 // return hours worked
36 double HourlyEmployee::getHours() const
37 {
38     return hours;
39
40 } // end function getHours
41
42 // return wage
43 double HourlyEmployee::getWage() const
44 {
45     return wage;
46
47 } // end function getWage
48

```


[Outline](#)

79

hourly.cpp (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

49 // get hourly employee's pay
50 double HourlyEmployee::earnings() const
51 {
52     if ( hours <= 40 ) // no overtime
53         return wage * hours;
54     else // overtime is paid at wage * 1.5
55         return 40 * wage + ( hours - 40 ) * wage * 1.5;
56
57 } // end function earnings
58
59 // print hourly employee's information
60 void HourlyEmployee::print() const
61 {
62     cout << "\nhourly employee: ";
63     Employee::print(); // code reuse
64
65 } // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

80

hourly.cpp (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.32: **HourlyEmployee** class implementation file.

## 5.9. CASE STUDY: PAYROLL SYSTEM USING POLYMORPHISM 235

```
1 // Fig. 10.29: commission.h
2 // CommissionEmployee class derived from Employee.
3 #ifndef COMMISSION_H
4 #define COMMISSION_H
5
6 #include "employee.h" // Employee class definition
7
8 class CommissionEmployee : public Employee {
9
10 public:
11     CommissionEmployee( const string &, const string &,
12                       const string &, double = 0.0, double = 0.0 );
13
14     void setCommissionRate( double );
15     double getCommissionRate() const;
16
17     void setGrossSales( double );
18     double getGrossSales() const;
19
20     virtual double earnings() const;
21     virtual void print() const;
22
23 private:
24     double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
25     double commissionRate; // commission percentage
26
27 }; // end class CommissionEmployee
28
29 #endif // COMMISSION_H
```

Must set rate and sales.

81

Outline

commission.h  
(1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```
1 // Fig. 10.30: commission.cpp
2 // CommissionEmployee class member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "commission.h" // Commission class
8
9 // CommissionEmployee constructor
10 CommissionEmployee::CommissionEmployee( const string &first,
11                                       const string &last, const string &socialSecurityNumber,
12                                       double grossWeeklySales, double percent )
13   : Employee( first, last, socialSecurityNumber )
14 {
15     setGrossSales( grossWeeklySales );
16     setCommissionRate( percent );
17
18 } // end CommissionEmployee constructor
19
20 // return commission employee's rate
21 double CommissionEmployee::getCommissionRate() const
22 {
23     return commissionRate;
24
25 } // end function getCommissionRate
```

82

Outline

commission.cpp  
(1 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.33: CommissionEmployee class header file.

```

26
27 // return commission employee's gross sales amount
28 double CommissionEmployee::getGrossSales() const
29 {
30     return grossSales;
31 }
32 // end function getGrossSales
33
34 // set commission employee's weekly base salary
35 void CommissionEmployee::setGrossSales( double sales )
36 {
37     grossSales = sales < 0.0 ? 0.0 : sales;
38 }
39 // end function setGrossSales
40
41 // set commission employee's commission
42 void CommissionEmployee::setCommissionRate( double rate )
43 {
44     commissionRate = ( rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0 ) ? rate : 0.0;
45 }
46 // end function setCommissionRate
47

```



 [Outline](#) 83  
 commission.cpp  
 (2 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

48 // calculate commission employee's earnings
49 double CommissionEmployee::earnings() const
50 {
51     return getCommissionRate() * getGrossSales();
52 }
53 // end function earnings
54
55 // print commission employee's name
56 void CommissionEmployee::print() const
57 {
58     cout << "\ncommission employee: ";
59     Employee::print(); // code reuse
60 }
61 // end function print

```

 [Outline](#) 84  
 commission.cpp  
 (3 of 3)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.34: `CommissionEmployee` class implementation file.

## 5.9. CASE STUDY: PAYROLL SYSTEM USING POLYMORPHISM 237

```

1 // Fig. 10.31: baseplus.h
2 // BasePlusCommissionEmployee class derived from Employee
3 #ifndef BASEPLUS_H
4 #define BASEPLUS_H
5
6 #include "commission.h" // Employee class definition
7
8 class BasePlusCommissionEmployee : public CommissionEmployee {
9
10 public:
11     BasePlusCommissionEmployee( const string &, const string &,
12         const string &, double = 0.0, double = 0.0, double = 0.0 );
13
14     void setBaseSalary( double );
15     double getBaseSalary() const;
16
17     virtual double earnings() const;
18     virtual void print() const;
19
20 private:
21     double baseSalary; // base salary per week
22
23 }; // end class BasePlusCommissionEmployee
24
25 #endif // BASEPLUS_H

```

Inherits from **CommissionEmployee** (and from **Employee** indirectly).

Outline

85

s.h (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 10.32: baseplus.cpp
2 // BasePlusCommissionEmployee member-function definitions.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6
7 #include "baseplus.h"
8
9 // constructor for class BasePlusCommissionEmployee
10 BasePlusCommissionEmployee::BasePlusCommissionEmployee(
11     const string &first, const string &last,
12     const string &socialSecurityNumber,
13     double grossSalesAmount, double rate,
14     double baseSalaryAmount )
15     : CommissionEmployee( first, last, socialSecurityNumber,
16         grossSalesAmount, rate )
17 {
18     setBaseSalary( baseSalaryAmount );
19 }
20 // end BasePlusCommissionEmployee constructor
21
22 // set base-salaried commission employee's wage
23 void BasePlusCommissionEmployee::setBaseSalary( double salary )
24 {
25     baseSalary = salary < 0.0 ? 0.0 : salary;
26 }
27 // end function setBaseSalary

```



Outline

86

baseplus.cpp  
(1 of 2)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.35: BasePlusCommissionEmployee class header file.

```

28
29 // return base-salaried commission employee's base salary
30 double BasePlusCommissionEmployee::getBaseSalary() const
31 {
32     return baseSalary;
33 }
34 // end function getBaseSalary
35
36 // return base-salaried commission employee's earnings
37 double BasePlusCommissionEmployee::earnings() const
38 {
39     return getBaseSalary() + CommissionEmployee::earnings();
40 }
41 // end function earnings
42
43 // print base-salaried commission employee's name
44 void BasePlusCommissionEmployee::print() const
45 {
46     cout << "\nbase-salaried commission employee: ";
47     Employee::print(); // code reuse
48 }
49 // end function print

```


[Outline](#)

87

 baseplus.cpp  
 (2 of 2)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

```

1 // Fig. 10.33: fig10_33.cpp
2 // Driver for Employee hierarchy.
3 #include <iostream>
4
5 using std::cout;
6 using std::endl;
7 using std::fixed;
8
9 #include <iomanip>
10
11 using std::setprecision;
12
13 #include <vector>
14
15 using std::vector;
16
17 #include <typeinfo>
18
19 #include "employee.h" // Employee base class
20 #include "salaried.h" // SalariedEmployee class
21 #include "commission.h" // CommissionEmployee class
22 #include "baseplus.h" // BasePlusCommissionEmployee class
23 #include "hourly.h" // HourlyEmployee class
24

```


[Outline](#)

88

 fig10\_33.cpp  
 (1 of 4)

 © 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
 All rights reserved.

 Figure 5.36: `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` class implementation file.

5.9. CASE STUDY: PAYROLL SYSTEM USING POLYMORPHISM 239

```

25 int main()
26 {
27     // set floating-point output formatting
28     cout << fixed << setprecision( 2 );
29
30     // create vector employees
31     vector < Employee * > employees( 4 );
32
33     // initialize vector with Employees
34     employees[ 0 ] = new SalariedEmployee( "John", "Smith",
35     "111-11-1111", 800.00 );
36     employees[ 1 ] = new CommissionEmployee( "Sue", "Jones",
37     "222-22-2222", 10000, .06 );
38     employees[ 2 ] = new BasePlusCommissionEmployee( "Bob",
39     "Lewis", "333-33-3333", 300, 5000, .04 );
40     employees[ 3 ] = new HourlyEmployee( "Karen", "Price",
41     "444-44-4444", 16.75, 40 );
42

```

89


 [Outline](#)

fig10\_33.cpp  
(2 of 4)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

43     // generically process each element in
44     for ( int i = 0; i < employees.size()
45
46         // output employee information
47         employees[ i ]->print();
48
49         // downcast pointer
50         BasePlusCommissionEmployee *commissionPtr =
51             dynamic_cast < BasePlusCommissionEmployee * >
52             ( employees[ i ] );
53
54         // determine whether element points to base-salaried
55         // commission employee
56         if ( commissionPtr != 0 ) {
57             cout << "old base salary: $"
58                 << commissionPtr->getBaseSalary() << endl;
59             commissionPtr->setBaseSalary(
60                 1.10 * commissionPtr->getBaseSalary() );
61             cout << "new base salary with 10% increase is: $"
62                 << commissionPtr->getBaseSalary() << endl;
63
64         } // end if
65
66         cout << "earned $" << employees[ i ]->earnings() << endl;
67
68     } // end for
69

```

90

Use downcasting to cast the employee object into a **BasePlusCommissionEmployee**. If it points to the correct type of object, the pointer is non-zero. This way, we can give a raise to only **BasePlusCommissionEmployees**.



© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.37: Employee class hierarchy driver program.(part 1 of 2)

```

70 // release memory held by vector employees
71 for ( int j = 0; j < employees.size(); j++ ) {
72
73     // output class name
74     cout << "\ndeleting object of "
75         << typeid( *employees[ j ] ).name();
76
77     delete employees[ j ];
78
79 } // end for
80
81 cout << endl;
82
83 return 0;
84
85 } // end main

```

 [Outline](#) 91  
 fig10\_33.cpp  
 (4 of 4)

typeid returns a `type_info` object. This object contains information about the operand, including its name.

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

```

salaried employee: John Smith
social security number: 111-11-1111
earned $800.00


commission employee: Sue Jones
social security number: 222-22-2222
earned $600.00

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 333-33-3333
old base salary: $300.00
new base salary with 10% increase is: $330.00
earned $530.00

hourly employee: Karen Price
social security number: 444-44-4444
earned $670.00

deleting object of class SalariedEmployee
deleting object of class CommissionEmployee
deleting object of class BasePlusCommissionEmployee
deleting object of class HourlyEmployee

```

 [Outline](#) 92  
 fig10\_33.cpp  
 output (1 of 1)

© 2003 Prentice Hall, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Figure 5.38: **Employee** class hierarchy driver program.(part 2 of 2)



## 5.10 vita

Cem Özdoğan was born in Merzifon, Amasya on October 23, 1969. He received his B.S. degree in Physics from the Middle East Technical University in June 1994. He received his M.S. degree in Physics from the Middle East Technical University in June 1996. He received his Ph.D. degree in Physics from the Middle East Technical University in June 2002. He worked as a research assistant from 1994 to 2001 in the department of physics, Kırıkkale University and Middle East Technical University and as instructor in the department of computer engineering, Çankaya University from 2001 to 2002. He is currently employed as Assist. Prof. in the department of computer engineering, Çankaya University. His main areas of interest are electronic structure calculations, parallel computing and scientific computing.